

2026 专升本 SVIP 班语法阶段讲义 .....	1
第一课: 句子成分与句子结构 .....	1
第二课: 句子类型 .....	13
第三课: 名词 .....	21
第四课: 冠词 .....	35
第五课: 形容词 .....	48
第六课: 副词 .....	61
第七课: 代词 .....	75
第八课: 介词的底层逻辑 .....	89
第九课: 动词与情态动词 .....	105
第十课: 时态和语态 .....	117
第十一课: 名词性从句 .....	131
第十二课: 定语从句 .....	148
第十三课: 状语从句 .....	165
第十四课: 虚拟语气 .....	181
第十五课: 主谓一致 .....	194
第十六课: 强调、倒装 .....	206
第十七课: 非谓语动词 .....	218
第十八课: 祈使句和省略 .....	230

## 2026 专升本 SVIP 班语法阶段讲义

主讲人: 专升本曹哥

### 第一课: 句子成分与句子结构

前言

#### 1. 语法是什么?

简单来说, 语法就是研究两方面问题: 说什么和怎么说, 语法就是研究语言形式、意义和用法之间的关系。

#### 2. 如何学习语法?

本阶段, 我们重点学习英语语法各个方面的细节和联系, 帮助大家构造一个完整的语法体系, 请忘了过往学的一切“不完整不全面”的破碎知识点, 从零开始, 掌握专升本语法!

在英语中，句子分为简单句、并列复合句和主从复合句。简单句有五种基本句型，其他句型都是由这五种基本句型变化而来，所以核心就是掌握种基本句型。

## part1 法

### · 句子成分

**主语:** 用于说明谓语表示的动作或状态的执行者。名词、代词、数词、不定时、动名词和从句等都可以作为句子的主语。

例:

1) 名词做主语

例:

**A light wind** woke among the trees. 微风从林间掠过。

2) 代词作主语

例:

**This** is all I want. 这就是我想要的全部。

3) 数词做主语

例:

**Four and five** makes nine. 四加五等于九。

4) 名词化的形容词做主语

例:

**The wounded** should be sent to hospital at once. 受伤人员应该立即送往医院。

5) 不定式作主语 (to do)

例:

**To study English** is important. 学习英语很重要。

6) 动名词作主语 (V-ing)

例:

**Seeing** is believing. 眼见为实。

7) 从句作主语

例:

**What we can't get** seems better than what we have. 得不到的永远在骚动。

思考: 如何快速找出主语?

---动词

**谓语:** 表示主语行为或所处的状态。谓语由动词担当。

例:

I **have tried** this way three times. 我用这种方法试了三次。

表语

表语与前面的系动词一起构成复合谓语，用来说明主语的特征、属性、状态、身份等。充当表语的可以是名词、代词、数词、形容词、副词、介词短语、非谓语或从句。

---是什么? 怎么样?

She is **a girl**. 是什么---女孩---表语: a girl

She is beautiful. 怎么样----漂亮----表语: beautiful

例:

1) 名词作表语

例:

Love is **a sweet torment**. 爱是一种甜蜜的折磨。

2) 代词作表语

例:

Seventy-nine? You don't look **it**. 69? 你看起来不像啊。

3) 数词作表语

例:

She was **the first** to leave but the last to arrive. 她是第一个走的，却是最后一个到的。

4) 形容词作表语

例:

She is **pretty** but I am **ordinary**. 她很漂亮可我很普通，

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

### 5) 从句作表语

例:

The tragedy of life is **not a man loses but he almost wins**.

人生的悲剧不在于一个人输了，而是在于他差点赢了。

### 宾语

宾语是动作的承受者，一般由名词代词等充当。

例:

I need **two hamburgers**. 我需要两个汉堡。

### 定语

定语是用来描述名词或代词的修饰语

She is beautiful. ----- beautiful---表语

She is a beautiful girl. ----beautiful---定语

第二个句子的表语是什么? a beautiful girl

例:

Look at these **beautiful** flowers! 看这些美丽的鲜花。

Where is **your** dog? 你的狗在哪呀?

She cut the cake into **two** pieces. 她把蛋糕切成了两块。

This is a **stone** table. 这是一张石桌。

Put the child in the **sleeping** bag. 把孩子放进睡袋。

### 状语

状语是用来修饰动词，形容词，副词或句子的一种成分。它可以表示时间、地点、方式、等。

昨天, **Dz** 在西湖看见了一条蛇妖。

昨天, **23 岁的 Dz** 在西湖看见了一条蛇妖。

定语--“服务” ----名词...

状语--“服务” ---句子、形容词、动词...

例:

I **hardly** ever go out. 我几乎从不去。

The boy went home, **hungry and tired**. 男孩又饿又累地回到家。

状语和定语在句子中的作用:

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

## 1. 状语

状语是用来修饰动词，形容词，副词或句子的一种成分。它可以表示时间、地点、方式、等。

例：

时间： I met a stranger yesterday.

地点： I ate a big meal in the school.

方式： He can run fast.

## 2. 定语

定语是用来描述名词或代词的修饰语

例：

前置定语： He is a handsome boy.

后置定语： Something terrible must have happened.

## 补足语

补足语是用来说明宾语或主语的动作，性质，状态等的一种句子成分。

例：

I find him a reliable man. 我发现他是可信赖的人。

We all imagine him foolish. 我们都认为他很傻。

## 同位语

对句子中某一成分作进一步解释，说明，与前面被修饰部分在语法上处于同等地位的句子成分叫同位语。

We should study hard. 我们---学生

We students should study hard.---2 同

1 同： 意思相同

2 同： 功能相同

例：

They each can get a chance to travel by air. 他们每个人都有机会坐飞机旅行。

Tom, the head of the group, is a nice man. 组长汤姆是个好人。

## 独立成分

独立于句子之外的成分，例如感叹词、称呼语和插入语是常见的三种独立成分。

例：

**Oh, no.** I never thought it would be so worse. 不会吧，我从来没有想到会这么糟糕。

**Hi, everyone!** Allow me to introduce myself! 嗨大家好，请允许我介绍我自己。

**Nobody knows it, I say,** nobody! 没有人知道这件事，我说的，没有人!

## · 句子结构

### 1. 主语+谓语

谓语---动词---类别：及物动词 vt/不及物动词 vi

及物动词---可以直接跟宾语 I reach Hangzhou.

不及物动词---不能直接跟宾语 I can run.

不及物动词+介词+宾语

I arrived.

I arrived in Hangzhou.

第一类句型结构最简单，就是 主语+谓语。意思是“主语做...”

You study.

主语 谓语

I teach.

主语 谓语

We talk.

主语 谓语

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

此类句型的动词后不跟宾语或补语，称之为不及物动词，那么常见不及物动词有：

表示来，去，出发，到达等意义的往来动词	go, come, begin, start, leave, arrive, move...
存在动词	Exist, be
发生	Happen, occur

这些由主语+谓语构成的句子，虽然也是完整的句子，但是过于简单，平淡。那么，需要什么才能让它表达意思更完整呢？副词！！

I go (fast).

I study (hard).

We talk (loudly).

在句子中加入副词，可以更详细地说明动词所表达的动作，让句意更加明确。也就是说，副词是句子中可有可无的修饰语，但是副词可以起到让句子更加生动，更详细的作用。构成句子的要素仍然是主谓宾补。

例句：

Once upon time, a pretty girl **lived** in the woods with her family.

状语 1, (定语) 主 + 谓 状语 2 状语 3

During the summer season, **the public library** in the city hall **opens** for local residents.

状语 1, (定语) 主 (状语 2) + 谓 (状语 3)

主干: **the library opens**

其余都是“修饰”成分

## 2. 主语+系动词+表语 (主语+谓语+表语)

系动词--“特殊”：可接形容词

**She is a girl.**

**She is beautiful.**

表语一般是形容词或者名词和代词充当，主系表成分表示“什么怎么样”或“什么是什么”

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

例:

I am a doctor.

She is a student.

He is handsome.

## 系动词

系动词的种类与用法

系动词后面可以跟形容词或者名词构成系表结构

### (1) be 翻译为“是”

这个系动词最常用的最广泛

例:

Death is the great leveler. 死亡面前人人平等。+n

Art is long, but life is short. 人生有限，学海无涯。+adj

### (2) appear 表示“看上去，显得”

例:

Don't make him appear a fool. 别把他弄得跟傻子似的。+n

His influence was considerable but now he appears ridiculous. 他原先影响很大现在却成了小丑。+adj

### (3) become/get/turn 表示“变得，成为”

例:

He became a teacher 10 years ago. 他十年前成为了一个老师。+n

Think more, and you will become wiser. 多思考，你会变得更睿智。+adj

They have finally decided to get married. 他们最终决定 结婚。+adj

You are getting quite a beautiful lady now. 你现在都长成一个漂亮的淑女了。+n

注: become 和 get 区别:

become 是指身份、职位的变化，作瞬间动词时指状态的变化。

get 常指某人或某物有意无意地获得引起变化的因素，结果使变成另一状态。

### (4) fall “陷入”

例:

She fell an easy prey to his charm. 她一下子就被他迷住了。 +n

He fell ill again. 他又生病 了。+adj

### (5) Keep/stay 表示“保持，处于”

例:

We must keep quite. 我们必须保持安静。+adj

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

She stay single all her life. 她一辈子都单身。+adj

(6) **remain** 表示“继续处于某种状态”

例:

His death remains a mystery. 他的去世任然是个谜。+n

The author chooses to remain anonymous. 作者不愿意署名。+adj

(7) **prove** 表示“证明是”

例:

The task proved more difficult than we had imagined. 那个任务比我们想象的难。+adj

His wealth proved a curse to him. 他的财富最后害了他。+n

(8) 感官动词类 表示“...起来”

1) 视觉: 看起来

a. **look**

例:

He looks in very good health. 他看起来气色好极了。

b. **seem**

例:

If the world seems cold to you, kindle fires to warm it.

如果这个世界很冰冷，那就去点燃火把温暖它。

2) 听觉: **sound** 表示“听起来”

例:

The story sounds phoney to me. 我觉得这个故事听起来很假。

3) 味觉: **taste** 表示“尝起来...”

例:

My first attempt at a cake tasted horrible. 我第一次做的蛋糕难吃极了。

4) 嗅觉: **smell** 表示“闻起来...”

例:

Your breath smells terrible. 你呼吸闻起来糟透了。

5) 触觉/感觉: **feel/touch** 表示“摸起来..., 感觉”

例:

That drink has made me feel quite bad. 那种饮料让我感觉不舒服。

Your forehead feels hot. 你额头摸起来很烫。

### 3. 主语+谓语+宾语 (名词/代词/句子)

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

第三类句型相当于，“谁+做+什么”，宾语由名词或代词充当（不能是形容词）。

很明显，此时动词都是需要接宾语的动词，称为及物动词。

I love you.

You hate me.

I need water.

Tony married with Fiona.

改: Tony married ~~with~~ Fiona.

I reach at Hangzhou.

改: I reach ~~at~~ Hangzhou.

I enter into the post office.

改: I enter ~~into~~ the post office.

#### 4. 主语+谓语+宾语 1+宾语 2

此类句型是“某人给某人某物”。在“我给小明一瓶茅台”这个句子中，“给”是动作，直接“给”出去的是茅台，所以它是直接宾语，而小明是间接承受这个动作，所以他是间接宾语。

She made him a dress.

她给他做了一件礼服。

You teach us English.

你教我们英语。

He asks me a question.

他问我一个问题。

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

复习一下人称代词的宾格:

主格	宾格
I	me
we	us
you	you
he	him
she	her
they	them
it	it

间接宾语“给某人”可以变成“介词+名词”的形式，可以使得第四类句型变成第三类:

I gave him money = I gave money to him.

主谓宾宾            主谓宾 (状)

I show her my note = I show my note to her.

He brings me a letter = he brings a letter to me.

### 5. 主语+谓语+宾语+宾语补足语

I give him an apple.  
We call him a spy.

主谓宾补: 宾语跟宾语补足语逻辑上构成“主谓”关系

宾语补足语起到补充说明宾语的作用，可以是形容词或名词，在和宾语构成逻辑上的主谓关系。

You make me crazy. ( I am crazy)

We call him a spy. (he is a spy)

I think him a doctor. (he is a doctor)

## Part2 词

前缀: 表示尺寸 mini-;micro-;macro-;mega-等

①mini-小,超短

minibus 小型公交

miniskirt 超短裙

minipark 小型公园

minibreak 短假  
minishorts 超短裤  
ministate 小国  
minicrisis 短暂危机  
minisub 小型潜水艇

② micro-微

microskirt 超短裙  
microworld 微观世界  
microclimate 小气候  
microfibre 微纤维  
microgram 微克  
microcomputer 微型计算机  
microbiology 微生物学  
microscope 显微镜  
microbus 小型公交  
microchip 微芯片

③ macro-大的，宏观的

macroscale 大规模  
macroworld 宏观世界  
macrophysics 宏观物理学  
macrochange 大变化  
macroeconomics 宏观经济学  
macroclimate 大气候  
macrostructure 宏观结构  
macroplan 庞大的计划

④ mega-巨大的，兆（百万）

megabit 兆位  
megaphone 扩音器  
megastar 演艺巨星  
megaton 百万吨级  
megalith 巨石  
megawatt 兆瓦  
megadeath 以百万计的死亡  
megahertz 兆赫

## 第二课：句子类型

### part1 法

#### 1. 陈述句

陈述句用来叙述一件事或表明说话人的看法、态度等，陈述句的语序一般为“主语部分+谓语部分+其他”

例：

We felt excited when she came here. 当她来这里的时候，我们都很兴奋。

陈述句的否定形式：

1) 如果句子的谓语动词含有 **be** 动词，助动词或情态动词，其否定形式是在这些词后加 **not**;

例：

The man of grand personality is **not** afraid of loneliness.

极富个性的人是不惧怕孤独的。

I have **not** heard the latest news about the football match.

我还没听到有关足球比赛的最新消息。

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

He can **not** go back to his youth.  
他的青春一去不复返了。

2) 如果句子的谓语是实义动词，要在谓语动词前面加 **don't, doesn't, didn't**  
例：

They **didn't** know my address or telephone number. 他们不知道我的地址和电话号码。

We **do not** need your help. 我们不需要你的帮助。

He **does not** like you. 他不喜欢你。

牛刀小试：

请把下述句子改成否定句：

He has to go to school today.

~~He has not go to school today. He hasn't go to school today~~

have to “必须，不得不”

--He does not have to go to school today.

## 2. 疑问句

疑问句是用来提出问题，常见的疑问句有：一般疑问句、特殊疑问句、选择疑问句和反意疑问句

1) 一般疑问：用 **yes、no** 回答的疑问句

例：

Did you enjoy yourself in our city? 我们在城市玩的开心么？

主系表结构： She is a student. --- Is she a student?

主谓宾结构： She likes eating cakes. --- Does she like eating cakes?

有助动词结构： You have studied English for 10 years.  
--- Have you studied English for 10 years?

有情态动词结构： You can speak English. --- Can you speak English?

牛刀小试：

请把下述句子改成一般疑问句：

He has to go to school today.

--Does he have to go to school today?

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

2) 特殊疑问句：就句中某一部分进行提问的疑问句叫作特殊疑问句。特殊疑问句由特殊疑问词开头： what/who/whose/where/when/why/how 等。

He is a teacher.

He is who---Who is he      特殊疑问词+一般疑问句结构

例：

Who can I depend on? 我能依靠谁呢？

who-代词

can I depend on --- I can depend on+ ?

I can depend on who--- Who I can depend on--Who can I depend on?

When shall we start the programme? 我们什么时候启动新的计划。

when--副词

shall we start the programme -- we shall start the programme

We shall start the programme when-- When we shall start the programme

When shall we start the programme?

What can I say? 我能说些什么呢？

I can say what---What I can say-- What can I say?

特殊疑问句=特殊疑问词+疑问语序

Where can I lay all these packs of books? 这几包书我能放在哪里？

3) 选择疑问句

选择疑问句是对说话者对问题提出两个或两个以上的答案，供对方选择其一，由 or 连接。

例：

Are you German or French? 你是德国人还是法国人？

Would you like tea or coffee? 你要喝茶还是喝咖啡？

4) 反意疑问句

反意疑问句是附加在陈述句后的简短反问句，用来征询对前面陈述句所说的事情的肯定或否定意见。

You like me, do not you?

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

You do not like me, do you?

喜欢--Yes, I do

不喜欢---No, I don't

规则一：前否后肯，前肯后否

规则二：不去翻译意思，肯定 yes 否定 no

例：

You like sports, don't you? 你喜欢运动，是不是？

He is not good at playing the piano, is he?

You didn't attend the meeting, \_\_\_\_\_?

不管反意疑问句陈述部分是肯定还是否定的，回答都要根据事实，肯定 yes，否定 no.

### 3. 祈使句

表示请求、命令、劝告或者建议的句子是祈使句。

例：

第二人称：

**Be sure to come on time.** 请务必按时来!

第一、第三人称以 let 开头：

Let us try again.

Let's try again.

### 4. 感叹句

感叹句的四种句型：

1.What+名词+主语+谓语!

What a shame! 真可惜!

What fools they are! 他们是什么傻瓜!

2.What+形容词+名词+主语+谓语!

What a fine day!多么美好的一天啊!

What clever boys they are!他们是多么聪明的男孩啊!

3.How+形容词/副词+主语+谓语!

How nice! 真好啊!

How tall a boy he is! 他长得真高啊!

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

英文里感叹句是由 how 或者 what 引导的，how 是副词而 what 是代词

首先，我们得知道一个句子中，什么成分可以进行感叹，比如：



他跑的很快。-----他跑的真快啊!

很明显，这个“快”是副词，那么应该用副词来“修饰”

He runs fast--- How fast he runs!

(how+副词+主谓)

同理，主谓结构都可这样进行感叹，例如：

Time flies fast---How fast time flies!---How time flies!

如果是主系表或者主谓宾又该如何感叹呢？



例如：

She is a lovely girl. 去掉主系，还剩 a lovely girl，分析成分，有名词和形容词，这种时候可以分别用 what 和 how 引导感叹句

She is a lovely girl.

How lovely a girl she is!

What a lovely girl she is!

1. how (必须紧紧“粘着”形容词)

How lovely a girl she is!

2. what (无所谓，后面跟名词就行)

What a lovely girl she is!

举一反三：

I have a big dog.

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

How **big** a dog I have!

What **a big dog** I have!

但是，如果主谓后面跟着不可数名词或者可数名词复数呢？

例如：

It is nice weather.

**What nice weather it is!**

~~How nice weather it is!~~

They are lovely boys.

**What lovely boys they are!**

~~How lovely boys they are!~~

拓展练习：

It is the **nice** weather.

How **nice** the weather it is!

What the **nice** weather it is!

## 5. 存现句

基本结构：

**there be...**是存现句最基本的句式，**be** 动词的单复数与最靠近它的名词或代词一致。

例：

A small village at the foot of the mountain is there.

A small village is there.--There is a small village at the foot of the mountain

A school building stands there. 主+谓语+there

要求：变成 **there** 存现句

**there** +谓+主

There stands a school building.

进一步思考：一定 **there** 吗？**here** 可以吗？其他地点状语呢？

A bus comes here.

--Here comes a bus.

A school building stands at the foot of the mountain.

At the foot of the mountain stands a school building.

全部倒装语序

操练：

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

全部倒装:A tree lies between a school building and a factory.

Between a school building and a factory lies a tree.

There is a small village at the foot of the mountain,

There are four seasons in a year.

变式: be 动词之前可以加上 seem to/appear to/happen to/used to 或情态动词等, be 动词可以用 stand/live/exist 等替换

例:

There seemed to be no one who really understood me.似乎没人能真正理解我。

There happened to be no one in your office when I phoned.我打电话时, 你办公室正好没人。

There used to be a temple where the school lies now 现在学校所在的地方以前是座庙。

There must be something wrong with your computer.你的电脑一定有毛病。

There lives a family of five upstairs. 楼上住着一个五口之家。

There remains nothing more to be done.没有什么其他事可做了。

there be+名词+非谓语

There are some children\_\_\_\_\_in the river. 河里有几个游泳的孩子。  
swimming

## Part2 词

反、否: anti-;dis-;counter-;de-;mis-;mal-

① anti-反对, 防止

antibiotic 抗生素

antifreeze 防冻剂

antiscience 反科学

antismoking 反对吸烟的

antifat 防止肥胖

antiforeign 排外的

② dis-不，相反

disagree 不同意

dislike 不喜欢 unlike 不像

disbelieve 不相信

dishonest 不诚实的

disappear 消失

disorder 混乱

discontinue 中断

disloyal 不忠心的

③ counter-反

countermove 反抗行动

counteraction 反作用

counterattack 反击

counterdemand 反需求

countereffect 反效果

counterspy 反间谍

countertrend 反潮流

④ de-除去，取消（否定）

dewater 除去水分

desalt 除去盐分

decolour 脱色

de-oil 脱脂

deforest 砍伐森林

decode 解码

decamp 撤营

⑤ mis-误，错，恶（负面），不

misunderstand 误解

misuse 误用

misfortune 不幸

misspell 拼错

misread 读错

mistreat 虐待

misremember 记错

mislead 误导

⑥ mal-坏，错误，不良

maladjusted 不适用的

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

maladministration 管理不善  
malformed 畸形的  
malformation 畸形  
malnutrition 营养不良  
maltreat 虐待  
malfunction 不起作用  
maladroit 不灵巧的

## 第三课：名词

名词 (Noun) 是人类认识事物所使用的基本词汇，是表示人、物、地点以及抽象概念的名称的词。英语中的名词，可分为普通名词和专有名词，普通名词可依据其特征分为可数名词和不可数名词。本节将一一讲解。

### 一. 专有名词 (proper noun)

主要指人名、地名以及某些抽象事物专有的名称。

分类：

#### 1.人名

KUN, Hemingway, Mrs. Smith

注：有时候人名可以与其表示的称呼，称号或职务的普通名词连用，例如：President Kennedy 肯尼迪总统, General Patton 巴顿将军, Madame Curie 居里夫人等

#### 2.著作（书名，电影名，诗歌等）名字

War and Peace, Pride and Prejudice, Gone with the Wind

#### 3.月份以及星期，节日

January, February, March, April, May, June

July, August, September, October, November, December

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

Sunday, Monday, Tuesday, Wednesday, Thursday, Friday, Saturday  
New Year' s Day

4.某类人的名称

American, Russians, Jews

5.地名

Asia, America, Japan, Hangzhou

6.对家人的称呼

Mum, Dad, Uncle

注：专有名词的第一个字母必须大写，但其中的虚词如冠词，介词等的第一个字母不大写。  
例如：the People' s Republic of China 中华人民共和国。当所有的字母都大写时，冠词，介词等也需要大写，例如：THE UNITED KINGDOM OF GREAT BRITAIN AND NORTHERN IRELAND 大不列颠及北爱尔兰联合王国。

## 二. 名词的数

在中文里，我们是不区分名词是否可数。但在英文中，名词是分为可数和不可数的。透过现象看本质，那么可数名词是不是“可以数出来”，而不可数名词是不是“不能数出来”呢？请看以下俩例子：

rice (大米)



bread (面包)



当我们遇到一个自己认识，但却不知道是否可数的名词时该怎么办呢？

那么我们分为三步走：

- 1.把该词在脑海中一分为二
- 2.判断性质是否发生改变
- 3.若改变，则是可数名词；  
若未变，则是不可数名词

不可数名词 (un)

没有复数，只有单数形式，前面一般不加冠词

例如：Time is money. 时间就是金钱。

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

通常用可数名词去量化。

例如：A cup of coffee/two cups of coffee 一杯咖啡/两杯咖啡

注：虽然不可数名词没有复数形式，但在口语化的不可数名词量化中，罕见：

two coffees, two beers, two teas, a chocolate ice-cream 等。同学只需知道有这回事即可。

常见的不可数名词有：

①物质名词：ice, coffee, soup, grass, cloth, clothing, iron, food, bread 等。

②抽象名词：thought, success, advice, knowledge, experience, courage, fun, childhood 等。

## 可数名词 (cn)

可数名词在于有单复数的变化，那么我们一起复习以及总结一下名词单复数变化。

### 1. 一般情况在词尾加-s

地图 map-maps, 海 sea-seas, 女孩 girl-girls, 天数 day-days

### 2. 以 s, x, ch, sh 结尾的名词后加-es

班级 class-classes, 盒子 box-boxes, 手表 watch-watches, 盘碟 dish-dishes

(发音/k/的特例：stomach/epoch 胃/时代)

### 3. 以-f 或-fe 结尾的词,变-f 和-fe 为 v 再加-es

叶子；页；leaf-leaves, 刀 knife-knives, 妻子 wife-wives, 狼 wolf-wolves, 自己 self-selves, 生命 life-lives

加-s 信心 belief-beliefs, 负责人 chief-chiefs, 证明；检验 proof-proofs, 屋顶 roof-roofs, 分歧 gulf-gulfs

### 4. 以辅音字母加 y 结尾的名词，变 y 为 i 加-es

社交聚会；党，党派 party-parties, 家（庭）family-families, 故事 story-stories

(例外：dry-drys 禁酒论者 standby-standbys 后备人员)

### 5. 以辅音字母加-o 结尾的名词

一般加-es：英雄 hero-heroes, 马铃薯 potato-potatoes, 番茄 tomato-tomatoes, 蚊子 mosquito-mosquitoes

不少外来词加-s：钢琴 piano-pianos, 照片 photo-photos, 千克 kilo-kilos

两者皆可 零；零度/点 zero-zeros/zeroes, 火山 volcano-volcanoes/volcanos

英语里有些名词的复数形式是不规则的，现归纳如下：

#### 1. 改变名词中的元音字母或其他形式

男人 man-men, 女人 woman-women, 脚；英尺 (30.48cm) foot-feet, 鹅 goose-geese, 老鼠 mouse-mice

#### 2. 单复数相同

羊 sheep, 鹿 deer, 一系列 series, 工厂 works, 鳕鱼 cod, 鲑鱼 salmon, 野牛 bison

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

Craft 及其合成词：飞行器 craft, 飞机 aircraft, 气垫船 hovercraft, 宇宙飞船 spacecraft  
(work 作为“作品”时，复数为 works)

### 3.只有复数形式

ashes, clothes, thanks, goods, glasses, contents

### 4.一些集体名词总是用作复数

people, the police, cattle, staff

### 5.复数形式表示特别含义

customs(海关), forces(军队), times(时代), spirits(情绪), drinks(饮料), sands(沙滩), papers(文件报纸), manners(礼貌), looks(外表), brains(头脑智力), greens(青菜), ruins(废墟)

注：在表示“一个人”的时候我们用：a person, people 是“人群，人们”用作集体名词，但可见“a people”，所表达“一个民族，一个国家”的意思，视为一种特殊用法。

例：翻译以下句子

中华人民是一个勤劳且勇敢的民族。

---

## 合成名词

1.将主体名词变为复数 sons-in-law, lookers-on, passers-by, story-tellers

2.无主体名词时将最后一部分变为复数 grown-ups, housewives

3.将两部分变为复数 women singers, men servants

## 表示“某国人”时

加-s Americans, Australians, Germans, Greeks, Europeans

单复数同形 Swiss, Chinese, Japanese

以-man 或-woman 结尾的改为-men, -women Englishmen, Frenchwomen

## 其他

1.年份

The 1990s 或 1990' s 20 世纪 90 年代

3.缩写词

VIPs 或 VIP' s 贵宾们

## 拓展：名词修饰语

1. 只修饰可数名词的修饰语

few 很少几个，几乎没有      a few 几个

several 几个                      many 很多

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

a great/good many 很多      a (large/great) number of 若干

2. 只修饰不可数名词

little 很少，几乎没有      a little 有一些

a good/great deal of 很多      a bit of 有一点

3. 即可修饰不可数，又可以修饰可数名词

some 一些      a lot of 很多      lots of 很多

plenty of 充足的      enough 足够的      most 大多数

### 三. 名词所有格

· 名词所有格由“名词 + 's”以 s 结尾的单词则直接加 ' 构成，“'s”所有格常适用于以下各词：

表示有生命事物的名词及某些表示**时间，距离，国家**等无生命的名词。

(实质上可以理解为把名词变成对应定语，表示“.....的”)

例如：today' s newspaper      今天的报纸

Tom' s father      汤姆的父亲

five weeks' holiday      五周的假期

考点点拨：

's 所表示的从属关系是“主+从”，前面是主体后面是所属。

某些习惯搭配：

At one' s wit' s end 智穷计尽

To one' s heart' s content 尽情地

At a snail' s pace 缓慢地

Out of harm' s way 免受损害

名词所有格的不同含义：

his girl' s friend 他女儿的朋友

his girl friend 他的女朋友

that woman' s doctor 那位女士的医生

that woman doctor 那位女医生

名词所有格的特殊用法

1.表示住宅

at my sister' s 在我姐姐家

at Mr Wang' s 在老王家

2.表示场所

at the baker' s 在烘焙店

at the dentist' s 在牙医诊所

at the butcher' s 在肉店

at the chemist' s 在药房

· of 所有格的用法（使用范围更广，大部分情况下可以互换）：

例如：in the wind' s eye= in the eye of the wind 逆风

The girl' s dog=the dog of the girl 那个女孩的狗

1. 用于无生命的东西：the legs of the chair, the cover of the book.

2. 用于有生命的东西，尤其是有较长定语时：the classrooms of the first-year students.

3. 用于名词化的词：the struggle of the oppressed.

of 表示的从属关系是：“从+主”的形式，即后面才是主体，前面是从属。当所有者为人或者为代表人的专有名词或动物时，最好用' s 的所有格表示领属关系。

例如：

My uncle' s pipe 我叔叔的烟斗

The tiger' s den 虎穴

Jerry' s car 杰瑞的车

有些情况下，两个表达方式可以一起用，这称为双重所有格，部分双重所有格的区分：

a girlfriend of my brother

翻译：

a girlfriend of my brother' s

翻译：

John and his wife' s bank saving

翻译：

John' s and his wife' s bank saving

翻译：

A photo of my grandfather' s

翻译：

A photo of my grandfather

翻译：

名词的特殊结构

1. of+抽象名词=形容词

of great+抽象名词=very+形容词

例: of great value= valuable

of no+抽象名词=not +形容词

例: of no use=not useful

2. to one' s+ 表示情感的名词, 表示: “使人感到....”

例: To my horror, I realized my shirt was wet with blood.

意识到衬衫被血浸湿了, 我惊恐万分

3. with+抽象名词的含义

例: Jane turned red with anger(=angrily).

4. 抽象名词+itself, 相当于 “ (be) very+该名词所表示的品质形容词”

例: she is a beauty itself. 她是一位美人。

**拓展知识点: 名词用作定语**

知识点补充: 什么是定语?

定语: 用于修饰或限定名词 (或代词) 的成分, 可翻译为 “.....的”

例如: She is a beautiful girl.

其中 beautiful 翻译为 “漂亮的”, 修饰后面的 “girl”, 因此它是 “girl” 的一个定语。  
名词所有格可以充当定语作用, 但有些情况下, 名词也可以充当定语。

1. 表示材料的名词作定语, 说明被修饰的名词是什么原料制成的。

如: a diamond necklace 一条钻石项链; silk book 帛书。

2. 表示用途、性质的名词作定语。如: light waves 光波; sports shoes 运动鞋。

3. 如果两个名词构成部分与整体的关系, 则表示整体的名词可以作定语(常指物)。

如: animal bones 动物骨头; cigarette ends 烟头。

4. 表示地点的名词作定语, 说明被修饰的名词存在或发生的地方。

如: America' s culture 美国文化。

5. 表示性别或身份的名词作定语。如: a female elephant 一头母象。

6. 表示泛指的时间名词作定语。如: evening dress 晚礼服;

rooster year stamp 鸡年邮票。

但表示具体的时间名词作定语, 则要用所有格形式来表达。

如: yesterday' s news 昨天的消息; an hour' s drive 一小时的车程。

注意: 名词作定语时, 一般用单数形式, 但在特殊情况下, 要用复数形式。

如: sports meeting 运动会; the United States government 美国政府;

the students reading-room 学生阅览室; goods train 货车; two men-doctors 两个男医生

## Part2 词

表示位置关系: inter-; intra-; extra-; ex-; over-; under-; super-

### 1. inter- 在...之间

internet

international

intermix

intermarry

interracial

interchange

intercity

interplay

### 2. intra- 在内

intranet

intracity

intraday

intracompany

intragovernmental

intraoffice

intra-atomic

intracloud

### 3. extra-在...之外, 超出

extraordinary

extrasensory

extracurricular

extraterrestrial

extrajudicial

extramural

### 4. ex-外,出

export

expose

exclude

excavate

expel

exit

exclaim

express

extract

5. over-过度，太甚

overtalk  
overwork  
overstudy  
overproduction  
overdrink  
overquick  
oversize  
overweight

6. under-下，内（用于衣服），不足

undersized  
underwear  
underpay  
underline  
undersea  
undervest  
underground

6. super-超，超级

superwoman  
supermarket  
superglue  
superconductor  
superpower  
superliner  
supersized  
supernormal  
supermodel

7. trans-越过，转移，横穿

transnational  
transverse  
transform  
transplant  
transnormal  
translocation  
transatlantic  
transship

## 作业与练习

### 基础巩固

1. Mr. Black gave us \_\_\_\_ on how to learn English well.  
A. an advice      B. many advices      C. some advice      D. some advices
2. You can get much \_\_\_\_\_ about the World Expo on the Internet.  
A. map      B. picture      C. ticket      D. information
3. I saw many \_\_\_\_\_ eating grass on the hill.  
A. horse      B. cow      C. rabbit      D. sheep
4. I don't think looking after children is just \_\_\_ work.  
A. woman      B. woman's      C. women      D. women's
5. The hospital is a bit far from here. It's about \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. forty minutes walk      B. forty minute's walk  
C. forty minutes' walks      D. forty minutes' walk
6. There are a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ planting trees on the hill.  
A. boy      B. people      C. girl      D. student
7. – Your English is very good. Who taught you?  
– Nobody. I taught \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. me      B. him      C. himself      D. myself
8. Listen! The \_\_\_\_\_ are singing in the next room.  
A. twins babies      B. twin babies      C. twins' baby      D. twin's baby
9. We all think football is not only \_\_\_\_ game. Some girls like football, too.  
A. a boy's      B. boy's      C. boys'      D. the boys'
10. There are a lot of yellow \_\_\_\_\_ on the tree when autumn comes.  
A. leafs      B. leaves      C. apple      D. banana
11. There are about one hundred teachers in our school. Two thirds of them are \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. women teachers      B. woman teachers      C. women teacher      D. woman teacher

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

12. — They are thirsty. Will you please give them \_\_\_\_\_ ?

— Certainly.

- A. some bottles of waters      B. some bottles of water  
C. some bottle of water      D. some bottle of waters

13. Mike hurt one of his \_\_\_\_\_ in the accident yesterday.

- A. tooth      B. feet      C. hand      D. ear

14. There is some \_\_\_\_\_ on the plate.

- A. cakes      B. meat      C. potato      D. pears

15. The \_\_\_\_\_ has two \_\_\_\_\_ .

- A. boys; watches      B. boy; watch      C. boy; watches      D. boys; watch

用括号中所给的词的适当形式填空

1. Please take some \_\_\_\_\_ (medicine) and stay in bed for two days.

2. The baby has already had four \_\_\_\_\_ (tooth) when she was seven months old.

3. Could you help me to clean the fallen \_\_\_\_\_ (leaf) on the ground?

4. We need a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ (dictionary) in our class. Could you buy some for us?

5. We had better take three \_\_\_\_\_ (week) holidays after the hard work.

6. — Whose car is this?

— I think it must be your \_\_\_\_\_ (father).

6. I hear the yellow car is \_\_\_\_\_ (Dave and Jane). Is it right?

7. Our teacher is very angry with your brother because he made many \_\_\_\_\_ (mistake) in his homework.

8. There is a lot of \_\_\_\_\_ (salt) in my soup. It is too salty to drink.

10. The Olympic Flame was carried to different \_\_\_\_\_ (city) in China.

### 提升训练

1. “Where \_\_\_\_\_ my trousers?” the boy asked.

- A. is      B. was      C. were      D. are

2. There are three \_\_\_\_ in our factory.  
A. woman doctors    B. women doctors    C. woman doctor    D. women doctor
3. Which do you prefer \_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_?  
A. potatos, tomatos    B. potatos, tomatoes    C. potatoes, tomatos    D. potatoes, tomatoes
4. They are \_\_\_\_ of different presses(出版社). Now they are having a meeting in one of the \_\_\_\_ office.  
A. editor-in-chiefs, editors-in-chief's    B. editors-in-chief, editor-in-chief's  
C. editors-in-chiefs, editor's-in-chief's    D. editors-in-chief, editors-in-chief's
5. The ant has two \_\_\_\_.  
A. stomachs    B. stomacks    C. stomach    D. stomachs
6. He doesn't like \_\_\_\_ for supper.  
A. chick    B. chicken    C. chickens    D. chicks
7. It was \_\_\_\_ hot weather that many of us went swimming.  
A. so    B. such    C. so as    D. such a
8. \_\_\_\_ wonderful space they saw on the room!  
A. How    B. How a    C. What    D. What a
9. We know \_\_\_\_ travels not so fast as light.  
A. sound    B. sounds    C. the sounds    D. a sound
10. My family raise a lot of \_\_\_\_, including two \_\_\_\_.  
A. cattle, cows    B. cows, cattle    C. cattles, cows    D. cow, cattles
11. A number of soldiers \_\_\_\_ at he camp gate.  
A. have gathered    B. has gathered    C. is    D. was
12. The Browns have spent a large \_\_\_\_ of money on their new car.  
A. deal    B. amount    C. number    D. size
13. \_\_\_\_ work has been done to improve the people's living standard.  
A. Many    B. A great many    C. A great deal of    D. A number of
14. Mr Li shook \_\_\_\_ warmly with a friend.  
A. hand    B. a hand    C. hands    D. the hands
15. Two \_\_\_\_, please.  
A. coffee    B. coffees    C. cup of coffee    D. cups coffee
16. I can't pay as \_\_\_\_ as he asked for.  
A. high price a    B. high price    C. a high price    D. high a price

17. \_\_\_\_ knowledge of space develops rapidly.  
A. Man's B. Men's C. Mens' D. Person's
18. I stayed at \_\_\_\_.  
A. Xiao Wang's B. Wang's home C. the Wangs D. home of Wang
19. Sister Carrie works in a \_\_\_\_ factory.  
A. shoes B. shoses C. shoe D. shoe's
20. Have you ever read \_\_\_\_?  
A. today newspaper B. newspaper today C. newspaper of today D. today's newspaper
20. Two \_\_\_\_ walk didn't made me tired.  
A. hour B. hours C. hour's D. hours'
22. The mother over there is \_\_\_\_ mother.  
A. Julia and Mary B. Julia and Mary's C. Julia's and Mary's D. Julia's and Mary
23. Li Ming's handwriting is better than \_\_\_\_ in the class.  
A. anyone's B. anyone else C. anyone's else's D. anyone else's
24. The children are playing \_\_\_\_ on the \_\_\_\_.  
A. sand, sand B. sands, sands C. sand, sands D. sands, sand
25. If these trousers are too big, buy a smaller \_\_\_\_.  
A. set B. one C. copy D. pair

## 答案与解析

### 基础巩固

1. C. *advice* 是不可数名词，表示一些建议只能用 C 答案，表示一条建议 (a piece of *advice*)。
2. D. 本题句意是“你能从因特网上得到大量有关世博会的信息”。*information* 是不可数名词，可以用 *much* 修饰，指“大量信息”。
3. D. *many* 后面必须接可数名词的复数，只有 *sheep* 单复数相同，符合句意。
4. D. 本题考查名词所有格，*women* 是 *woman* 复数，不是以 -s 结尾的名词所有格一般加 -'s，*women's* 指“妇女们的”。
5. D. 本题是考查名词所有格和不可数名词的用法。加 -s 构成的名词复数形式的所有格是 *minutes'*。 *forty minutes' walk* 意思为“步行 40 分钟的路程”，*walk* 是不可数名词。

6. B。在短语 a lot of 的后面用可数名词的复数形式或者不可数名词。本句用 there are 则表示后面是用可数名词的复数形式，只有 people 是复数，所以选择 B。
7. D。本题是考查反身代词的用法。动词 taught 和反身代词连用表示“自学”的意思，反身代词和前面作主语的人称代词应该一致，所以选择 D。
8. B。本题是考查名词作定语一般用单数的用法，名词 twin 修饰后面的名词作定语，在被修饰的名词变为复数形式的时候，twin 仍用单数，所以本题选择 B。
9. C。本题是考查名词所有格和冠词的用法，从句意“我们都认为足球不仅仅是男孩的运动项目”推断“男孩”是泛指，应该用复数，但不加定冠词；名词复数的所有格在 s 后加“'”，所以选 C。
10. B。在短语 a lot of 的后面用可数名词的复数形式或不可数名词，由 are 可知应该用名词复数；leaf 的复数形式是 leaves，所以选 B。
11. A。本题是考查名词作定语的用法。man/woman 作定语的复合名词其复数形式是两个单词都变化。所以 woman teacher 的复数形式是 women teachers。
12. B。表示“一些瓶水”的 bottle 是可数名词，加-s，water 是不可数名词，没有复数形式。
13. B。one of 后面加复数名词，只有 feet 是复数名词。
14. B。由 there is 可知主语是单数名词或不可数名词，但是 some 后面只能接不可数名词或复数可数名词。
15. C。由 has 可知主语是单数，由 two 可知 watch 用复数形式。

用括号中所给的词的适当形式填空。

1. medicine      2. teeth      3. leaves      4. dictionaries      5. weeks'  
6. father's      7. Dave and Jane's      8. mistakes      9. salt      10. cities

### 提升训练

1. D. are

解析：“trousers”（裤子）是复数名词，总是用复数动词与之搭配。

2. B. women doctors

解析：复合名词中，两个名词都要变为复数形式。“woman”的复数是“women”，“doctor”的复数是“doctors”。

3. D. potatoes, tomatoes

解析：“potato”和“tomato”的复数形式分别是“potatoes”和“tomatoes”。

4. D. editors-in-chief, editors-in-chief's

解析：复合名词的复数形式是在主体名词后加复数（editors-in-chief），所有格形式是在整个复合名词后加's。

5. D. stomachs

解析：“stomach”的复数形式是“stomachs”。

6. B. chicken

解析：这里指的是鸡肉（不可数名词），而不是鸡（可数名词）。

7. B. such

解析：“such”用于修饰名词短语“hot weather”（不可数名词），“so”用于修饰形容词。

8. C. What

解析：感叹句中"space"在这里指的空间（不可数），用"What"修饰。

9. A. sound

解析：此处"sound"指声音（不可数名词），泛指声音这种现象。

10. A. cattle, cows

解析："cattle"是集体名词，没有复数形式；"cows"是"cow"的复数形式。

11. A. have gathered

解析："A number of"后接复数名词，谓语动词用复数形式。

12. B. amount

解析："amount"用于不可数名词"money"；"number"用于可数名词。

13. C. A great deal of

解析："work"是不可数名词，用"a great deal of"修饰。

14. C. hands

解析："shake hands with"是固定搭配，表示握手。

15. B. coffees

解析：这里"coffees"指两杯咖啡（可数名词表示份数）。

16. D. high a price

解析：固定结构"as + 形容词 + a/an + 名词 + as"。

17. A. Man's

解析："Man"指人类（单数），所有格是"Man's"。

18. A. Xiao Wang's

解析：表示在某人家用所有格形式（Xiao Wang's = Xiao Wang's home）。

19. C. shoe

解析：名词作定语时通常用单数形式（shoe factory）。

20. D. today's newspaper

解析：表示今天的报纸用所有格形式"today's newspaper"。

21. D. hours'

解析：复数名词的所有格形式表示"两小时的步行"。

22. B. Julia and Mary's

解析：表示两人共有的母亲，所有格加在最后一个名词后。

23. D. anyone else's

解析：比较的是"其他人的书法"，用"anyone else's"表示所有格。

24. C. sand, sands

解析："sands"指沙滩（特定区域），"sand"指沙子（物质）。

25. D. pair

解析：裤子是成对物品，用"pair"表示一条。

## 第四课：冠词

冠词是虚词，是名词的一种标志，它不能脱离名词而独立存在，不能单独作为句子成分。

### 1. 冠词的位置

冠词一般都要放在名词或名词短语（形容词+名词，副词+形容词+名词，或其他修饰语+名词）之前，例如：

a red wooden desk 一张红色的木头书桌 a historical novel 一本历史小说

还要熟悉以下情况：

1) all/both/half+the+(adj)名词

Both the books are expensive.

2) what/such/many+a(n)+(adj)名词

She is **such an intelligent girl**.

她是如此聪明的一个女孩。

3) as/how/so/too/however+adj+a(n)+单数可数名词

We haven't seen **so interesting a movie** as this for along time.

我们很久没有看过这么有意思的电影了。

一般来说，冠词有特指和泛指两种两种情况：

特指：说话者和听者都知道所指的内容

泛指：一类中的任何一个具有代表性或具有典型特征的个体，或不明确、不特别指明的一个例：

a car is coming over. 一辆车正行驶过来。

the car is coming over. 这辆车正行驶过来。



### 不定冠词的基本用法：

<b>a</b> 用于辅音音素开头的单词前。	"a book" (一本书) , "a university student" (一名大学生)
<b>an</b> 用于元音音素开头的单词前。	an apple" (一个苹果) , "an hour" (一个小时) , 注意尽管"hour"以辅音字母 h 开头, 但其发音以元音音素[ɑ:ə]开头, 因此使用"an

1. 泛指一个。如：There is a book on the table.

2. 指人或事物的某一种类。如：His father is a driver.

3. 指某一个人或事物，但不具体说明。如：My sister was saved by a man in the fire.

4. 用于某一些表示重量、长度、时间等的单位前，表示“每一”。如：We have meals three times a day.

5. 表示同样的。如: They are of an age.(他们同岁)。
6. 表数量, 相当于 one, 但语意较弱。如: There is a pen and two books on the desk.
7. 使抽象名词具体化。如: The little girl is a hand to her mother.(a hand 译为“帮手”)
8. 固定搭配。如: as a matter of fact, in a hurry, in a word。
9. “a/an + 序数词”不表示排序, 表“又一、再一”。Can you give me a second chance, please?
10. 有些物质名词, 如: rain, snow, fog, wind, tea, coffee 等, 其前有形容词修饰时, 形容词前应该加不定冠词。如: What a heavy rain!

## 不定冠词 a/an 与 one 的区别

1. 强调数量时“一”用 one

One week is enough for me to finish the task.

2. 用于准确的对照数字

two kilos of flour and one liter of water .

3. 用 one 强调人或事物

There is one place we have a happy hour in the night.

## 定冠词的基本用法

1. 表示上文提到过的人或事物。如: I have bought a book. The book is very useful.
2. 用于说话人与听话人心中都有数的人或事物。如: Close the window, please.
3. 用于表示世界上独一无二的事物前。如: the sun, the moon, the earth, the world 等。
4. 用于表示方位的名词之前。如: the east, the right。
5. 用于序数词或形容词的最高级之前, 以及对两个人或物进行比较时起限制作用的比较级前。如: the first, the second, the tallest, the most important, the taller of the two boys。
6. 用于形容词或过去分词之前, 使其名词化。如: the young(年轻人), the wounded(伤员)。
7. 用于由普通名词构成的专有名词之前。如: the United States, the United Nations。
8. 用于江河、海洋、海峡、山脉、群岛、建筑物等的名词之前。如: the Changjiang River, the East Lake。
9. 用于复数姓氏之前, 表示“夫妇”或“全家”。如: The Smiths。
10. 用于乐器的名词前。如: play the piano, play the violin。
11. 发明物。如: The compass was invented in China.
12. 年代名词前。如: He lived in the countryside in the 1970s.
13. 固定词组中。如: in the morning(afternoon, evening), on the other hand, at the same time
14. 用于表示计量单位的名词前。如: by the dozen, by the hour, by the day, by the yard 等。  
注: 如果表示单位的名词为不可数名词, 之前不用冠词, 如 by weight/height 等。
15. the very(正是那一个), the same(同样的), the only(唯一的)。
16. 在“主语 + 动词 + 介词 + the + 身体部位名词”结构中。如: strike sb. on the head 打在某人的头上, seize sb. by the collar 抓住某人的衣领, catch sb. by the arm 抓住某人的手臂。

## 定冠词与不定冠词之间的转换

1. 表示世界上独一无二的事物的名词。如 sun, sky, world, moon 等，前面一般用定冠词，但其前有描绘性的修饰语时，用不定冠词。试对比：

As is known to all, the earth moves around the sun.

What a bright moon!

2. “a/an + 比较级”表示“(众多人或事物中)比……更……的一个”，属于泛指；“the + 比较级”表示“两者中较为……的一个”。“a most + 形容词”表示“很……，非常……”。试比较：

This one is too small. Can you show me a larger one?

Tom is the older of the two boys.

Part one is a most difficult part but not the most difficult.

3. 注意序数词前冠词的使用。表示顺序时用“the + 序数词”；表示“再一，又一”时，用“不定冠词 + 序数词”。

I have two books. I want to buy a third one.

We have finished the first lesson, and now we will learn the second lesson.

## 零冠词的基本用法

1. 表示总称的复数名词之前。如：Children love cartoons.(儿童喜欢卡通片。)

2. 表示职位、头衔、称呼的名词，在句中作主语补足语、宾语补足语、表语、同位语时不加冠词。如：Mr. Smith, head of the group, will plan for the whole trip.

3. 专有名词、物质名词、抽象名词前常不用冠词。如：China, Smith 等。

4. 表示学科、球类、棋类、语言的名词前不用冠词。

5. 季节、月份、星期、节假日前一般不用冠词。如：on Friday, in summer 等。

注：季节等被限制性定语修饰时用定冠词；星期前加不定冠词表示“某一个……”；中国民间传统节日前常加定冠词。如：in the spring of 1992, a Tuesday in September, the Spring Festival

6. 一日三餐前通常不用冠词，但前面有描绘性形容词时，加不定冠词。

如：

What did you have for breakfast?

He had a wonderful supper.

7. 在一些成对出现的短语中不用冠词。

如：arm in arm (臂挽臂)；hand in hand(手牵手)；side by side(肩并肩)；day and day(一天一天)；young and old(老老少少)；from door to door(挨门挨户)；from beginning to end (从头到尾)；from morning till night(从早到晚)等。

8. 与 by 连用表示交通方式的名词前；以 and 连接的两个相对的名词连用时。

如：knife and fork, by bus, by plane 等。

9. 系动词 turn(变成)后的单数名词作表语，用零冠词。

After graduation from college he turned teacher(became a teacher).

部分短语，有无定冠词意思差别较大。

{at table 进餐

{at the table 在桌子旁

{in hospital 住院

{in the hospital 在医院里

{by sea 乘船 由海路

{by the sea 在海边

{go to sea 当水手

{go to the sea 去海边

{on earth 究竟

{on the earth 在地球上，在世上

{take place 发生

{take the place of 代替

{two of us 我们当中的两人

{the two of us 我们两人 共计两人

{out of question 毫无疑问，一定

{out of the question 不可能

{on the whole = in general 大体上，一般地

{as a whole = altogether 全部地，整体

{a number of 许多

{the number of ……的数目

{in front of 在…… 外部的 前面

{in the front of 在…… 内部的 前面

{for a moment 一会儿

{for the moment 目前，暂时

{in charge of 负责……

{in the charge of 由……负责，在……掌管之下

{in possession of 拥有

{in the possession of 为……所有

知识点:

## 一、与不定冠词连用的常考习语

have a gift for 有……的天赋  
get a lift/ride 搭便车  
as a rule 通常，照例  
in a hurry 匆忙地  
once in a while 偶尔  
a waste of ……的浪费  
have a population of 有……人口  
have a history of 有……的历史  
have an area of 有……的面积  
have a knowledge of 知道  
go on a diet 节食  
in a sense 在某种意义上  
at a loss 困惑，不知所措  
all of a sudden 突然  
a matter of ……的问题  
in a mess 杂乱  
as a matter of fact 实际上

## 二、与定冠词连用的常考习语

in the end 最后，终于  
for the time being 暂时  
on the radio/phone 通过无线电广播/电话  
on the spot 在场，到场，立即，马上，当场  
to tell(you) the truth 说实话，老实说  
not in the least(= not at all) 一点也不  
make the most/best of 充分利用  
in the way 挡路  
on the right/left 在右/左面

## 三、用零冠词的常考习语

ahead of time 提前  
under repair 在修理之中  
by mistake 错误地  
by law 根据法律  
on board 在船(或火车等)上  
at war 在交战  
in debt 负债  
by air/land/water 乘飞机/走陆路/走水路  
by design 故意地  
by accident 偶然地  
by chance 偶然地

数词

1.基数词：表示数目多少的数词。

基数词的表示方法：

1-12: one, two, three, four, five, six, seven, eight, nine, ten, eleven, twelve

13-19: 在个位数上加后缀 -teen 构成，并有两个重音。

thirteen, fourteen, fifteen, sixteen, seventeen, eighteen, nineteen

20-90 等十位数由 2-9 加后缀-ty 构成。

twenty, thirty, forty, fifty, sixty, seventy, eighty, ninety

21-29 由十位数 20 加个位数 1-9 构成，十位和个位之间加连字符号“-”，其他十位数以此类推。如：21 twenty-one、44 forty-four、98 ninety-eight

三位数数词要在百位和十位（若无十位则和个位）之间加 and。

632                    six hundred and thirty-two

基数词在修饰名词时不用加-s。如：four hundred students 四百人

但是当基数词与 of 连用的时，要加-s。如：hundreds of... thousands of...

数词常与名词构成复合定语。这些构成成分间用连字符，且只用名词单数形式。

例：a ten-month holiday. 一次十个月的假期

### 序数词：

表示顺序次第的数词

序数词的表示方法：

序数词 = 基数词+th，但以下几个特殊：

one-first, two-second, three-third, five-fifth. eight-eighth, nine-ninth, twelve-twelfth, twenty-twentieth ……，a hundred-a hundredth

通常与定冠词 the 连用

例：This is the first time I've been Beijing.这是我第一次来北京。

若表示“又一次或再一次”，前面用不定冠词 a(an)。

例：They have a second house. 他们另外有一个房子。

### 分数：

分子用基数词表示，分母用序数词表示，分子为 2 以上时，分母（序数词）应变为复数。

如：三分之一，one third/a third； 五分之三，three fifths

数词短语作主语时，谓语的数由 of 后面的名词来决定，名词为可数名词复数，则谓语用复数；名词为不可数名词，谓语用单数。

例：A third of the land is covered by forests.

Two thirds of the workers are working hard.

分子与分母之间加 in，分子在前，分母在后，分子分母都用基数词。如：one in ten + 分之一，five in eight 八分之五。

分子与分母之间加 out of，分子在前，分母在后，分子分母都用基数词。如：one out of ten 十分之一，five out of eight 八分之五

### 小数：

小数点前的基数词与前面所讲的基数词读法完全相同，小数点后面则须将数字一一读出。

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

如: 1.25 读作 one point two five, 0.56 读作 naught point five six 或 zero point five six

百分数:

百分号%读作 per cent。如: 5% 读作 five percent

## 作业与练习

### 基础训练

1. I found \_\_\_\_\_ dead dog in the river yesterday. But at first I thought it was my pet.  
A. a            B. an            C. the            D. one
2. If you work hard, you'll get \_\_\_\_\_ "A" in the exam.  
A. a            B. an            C. the            D. /
3. They often take \_\_\_\_\_ walk after dinner.  
A. a            B. /            C. the            D. an
4. Lily's mother is \_\_\_\_\_ teacher in a school.  
A. a            B. an            C. the            D. /
5. \_\_\_\_\_ Browns were having dinner when the telephone rang.  
A. A            B. An            C. The            D. /
6. Jenny goes to school on foot. It takes her about half \_\_\_\_\_ hour to get there.  
A. an            B. a            C. the            D. (不填)
7. My best friend Neil is \_\_\_\_\_ honest boy. You can believe him.  
A. a            B. an            C. the            D. /
8. – What are you going to do tomorrow?  
– I will play \_\_\_\_\_ football with my friends.  
A. a            B. the            C. an            D. /
9. Could you please help me to play \_\_\_\_\_ guitar?  
A. a            B. the            C. an            D. /
10. My little brother likes to eat \_\_\_\_\_ red apples. Please give him \_\_\_\_\_ apple.  
A. a; a        B. a; an        C. an; /        D. /; an
11. We should plant more trees in \_\_\_\_\_ spring and we often plant trees on \_\_\_\_\_ Sunday.  
A. a; /        B. /; the        C. /; /        D. the; a
12. As \_\_\_\_\_ honest boy, you should tell \_\_\_\_\_ truth to your father.  
A. an; the     B. an; a        C. an; /        D. a; the
13. Peer is \_\_\_\_\_ honest boy and \_\_\_\_\_ good friend of mine.  
A. a; the.     B. the; an     C. a; an        D. an; a
14. \_\_\_\_\_ old man in \_\_\_\_\_ brown coat over there is Mr. Jackson  
A. An, a        B. An, the     C. The, a        D. The, the
15. Look at \_\_\_\_\_ eraser on the floor. Whose is it?  
A. a            B. an            C. the            D. /

### 提升训练

1. ---You mean you know the man?     ---I know \_\_\_\_\_ man exactly like him.  
A. other        B. the            C. /            D. a

2. Wouldn't it be \_\_\_\_\_ wonderful world if all nations live in \_\_\_\_\_ peace with one another?  
A. a, /                      B. the, /                      C. a, the                      D. the, the
3. ---I hear that as many as 1,500 people were killed in the earthquake.  
---Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ news came as \_\_\_\_\_ shock to us.  
A. a, a                      B. the, a                      C. /, /                      D. /, a
4. At midnight they reached \_\_\_\_\_ small village \_\_\_\_\_ east of \_\_\_\_\_ Everwhite Mountain.  
A. a, /, the                      B. a, /, /                      C. the, the, the                      D. the, an, an
5. Nanjing lies on \_\_\_\_\_ Changjiang River and has \_\_\_\_\_ population of more than four million.  
A. the, the                      B. the, /                      C. the, a                      D. /, a
6. Bill Clinton took \_\_\_\_\_ office on January 20th, 1993 and left \_\_\_\_\_ office on January 20th, 2001.  
A. /, /                      B. his, his                      C. the, the                      D. an, his
7. We learn to go all out to work for \_\_\_\_\_ good of \_\_\_\_\_ society.  
A. the, /                      B. /, /                      C. /, a                      D. the, the
8. Paris is \_\_\_\_\_ most beautiful city, where you can see \_\_\_\_\_ famous Eiffel Tower.  
A. a, the                      B. a, /                      C. the, a                      D. the, the
9. ---What about \_\_\_\_\_ bike?    ---Do you think it all right to buy him \_\_\_\_\_ bike as \_\_\_\_\_ birthday present?  
A. the, the, the                      B. a, the, a                      C. the, a, the                      D. the, the, a
10. He had decided to give it up, but on \_\_\_\_\_ second thoughts he decided to try \_\_\_\_\_ third time.  
A. the, a                      B. /, /                      C. a, a                      D. /, a
11. Towards \_\_\_\_\_ morning, \_\_\_\_\_ heavy rain began to fall.  
A. the, a                      B. a, a                      C. the, /                      D. the, /
12. ---Excuse me, where are \_\_\_\_\_ books for biology?  
---Follow me. They' re on this shelf. Do you want \_\_\_\_\_ new or used book?  
A. a, a                      B. a, the                      C. the, a                      D. the, the
13. Young as he is, David has gained \_\_\_\_\_ rich experience in \_\_\_\_\_ society.  
A. /, /                      B. the, the                      C. a, /                      D. /, the
14. ---My son is lost. Did you see a boy passing by?  
---I saw \_\_\_\_\_ boy hidden behind \_\_\_\_\_ tree over there. You may go and have a look.  
A. a, a                      B. the, the                      C. a, the                      D. the, a
15. Mary climbed to the top of the mountain in \_\_\_\_\_ hurry, looked down and found in \_\_\_\_\_ surprise that \_\_\_\_\_ whole town took on a new look.  
A. a, the, the                      B. a, /, the                      C. /, /, the                      D. /, /, a
16. In \_\_\_\_\_ old society many young women died by so curious and cruel \_\_\_\_\_ custom.  
A. an, a                      B. /, the                      C. the, a                      D. the, /
17. ---You' re sure to help me find \_\_\_\_\_ bed for my new house?

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

- Sure, but not now. I'm heading for \_\_\_\_ bed and a good sleep.  
A. a, a                      B. the, a                      C. a, /                      D. the, /
18. The wheel is thought to be \_\_\_\_ first invention of \_\_\_\_ transportation.  
A. the, the                      B. a, a                      C. a, /                      D. the, /
19. Some people say that \_\_\_\_ British are \_\_\_\_ funny people.  
A. the, a                      B. /, the                      C. /, /                      D. the, /
20. Don' t worry about \_\_\_\_ mistakes. They' re \_\_\_\_ natural part of learning.  
A. /, a                      B. the, /                      C. /, the                      D. the, the
21. ---Selma looks especially pretty tonight.                      ---Yes, she always looks her best in \_\_\_\_ of that kind.  
A. the dress                      B. a dress                      C. dress                      D. the dresses
22. --- \_\_\_\_ did you think of the exhibition?                      ---Oh, it was \_\_\_\_ success.  
A. How, really a                      B. What, great                      C. How, /                      D. What, quite a
23. The child had only \_\_\_\_ slight temperature, but the doctor regarded \_\_\_\_ illness as serious enough for \_\_\_\_ hospital treatment.  
A. /, /, the                      B. a, /, /                      C. a, the, /                      D. /, the, the
24. ---Did you have \_\_\_\_ wonderful time yesterday?                      ---Yes. I was on \_\_\_\_ top of \_\_\_\_ world.  
A. /, the, a                      B. a, /, the                      C. a, a, the                      D. a, the, the
25. I don' t usually have \_\_\_\_ breakfast, but I always eat \_\_\_\_ good lunch.  
A. /, /                      B. /, a                      C. the, /                      D. /, the

## 答案与解析

### 基础巩固

1. A. 本题考查冠词的用法，泛指一类用 a，因为 dead 不是元音因素开头，不用 an。本题不着重强调数量，不用 one。
2. B. 因为字母 A 发音是元音因素，所以只能用 an，表示“一个”，泛指。
3. A. take a walk 固定搭配，意为“散步”。
4. A. 本题考查冠词的用法，泛指一类用 a，因为 teacher 不是元音因素开头，不用 an。
5. C. 本题考查定冠词 the 后接姓氏的复数，指一家人。
6. A. half an hour 固定搭配，hour 中的 h 不发音，所以是元音因素开头，用 an。
7. B. honest 的 h 不发音，所以用 an 不用 a，意为“一个诚实的男孩”。

8. D。本题是考查冠词的用法。球类运动前不用冠词，所以用 **play football** 表示“踢球”。
9. B。本题是考查冠词的用法，演奏的乐器前要用冠词 **the**，所以用 **play the guitar** 表示“弹吉他”。
10. D。本题是考查冠词的用法。在名词 **apple** 的前面用冠词 **an**，但在 **red apple** 的前面用冠词 **a**。此句中 **red apples** 是用复数表示一类事物，前面不用冠词。
11. C。本题是考查冠词的用法，在四季和星期的名词前一般不用冠词。
12. A。在 **honest** 的前应用冠词 **an**，因为 **h** 不发音，表示“一个”。第二个空用定冠词 **the** 表示特指。所以选择 A。
13. D。因为 **honest** 的 **h** 不发音，所以是元音音素开头，用 **an**，**a good friend** 表示“一个好朋友”。
14. C。名词 **man** 后面的介词短语提示 **man** 表示特指意义，用定冠词 **the**；“穿着一件……”，表示数量有“一”，辅音音素开头的单词前用不定冠词 **a** 表达。
15. C。**eraser** 是元音音素开头，表示泛指时，用 **an**，指“一块橡皮”。这里指地板上那块橡皮，表示特指，用 **the**。

### 提升训练

1. D. a

解析：此处表示“我认识一个和他一模一样的人”，泛指一个人，用不定冠词“a”。

2. A. a, /

解析：第一空表示“一个美好的世界”，用“a”；第二空“in peace”是固定搭配，不用冠词。

3. B. the, a

解析：第一空“the news”特指前面提到的地震消息；第二空“a shock”表示“一个震惊”，是泛指。

4. A. a, /, the

解析：第一空“a small village”泛指一个小村庄；第二空方位词“east”前不用冠词；第三空“the Everwhite Mountain”是专有名词，需加“the”。

5. C. the, a

解析：第一空“the Changjiang River”是专有河流名称，需加“the”；第二空“a population of”是固定搭配，表示“有多少人口”。

6. A. /, /

解析：“take office”和“leave office”是固定短语，表示“就职”和“离职”，不加冠词。

7. A. the, /

解析：第一空“the good of”表示“为了……的利益”；第二空“society”泛指社会时不用冠词。

8. A. a, the

解析：第一空“a most beautiful city”表示“一个非常美丽的城市”（注意：此处“most”不

表最高级)；第二空“the Eiffel Tower”是专有名词，需加“the”。

9. D. the, the, a

解析：第一空“the bike”特指之前提到的自行车；第二空“the bike”仍指同一辆；第三空“a birthday present”表示“一个生日礼物”，是泛指。

10. D. /, a

解析：第一空“on second thoughts”是固定短语，表示“转念一想”，不用冠词；第二空“a third time”表示“再一次”，用不定冠词。

11. A. the, a

解析：第一空“towards the morning”特指“快到早晨时”；第二空“a heavy rain”表示“一场大雨”，是泛指。

12. C. the, a

解析：第一空“the books”特指生物学的书；第二空“a new or used book”表示“一本新书或旧书”，是泛指。

13. A. /, /

解析：第一空“rich experience”是不可数名词，不用冠词；第二空“in society”泛指社会，不加冠词。

14. C. a, the

解析：第一空“a boy”泛指一个男孩；第二空“the tree”特指“那边的树”。

15. B. a, /, the

解析：第一空“in a hurry”是固定短语，表示“匆忙”；第二空“in surprise”是固定搭配，不用冠词；第三空“the whole town”特指“整个城镇”。

16. C. the, a

解析：第一空“the old society”特指旧社会；第二空“a custom”表示“一种习俗”，是泛指。

17. C. a, /

解析：第一空“a bed”表示“一张床”，是泛指；第二空“head for bed”是固定短语，表示“去睡觉”，不用冠词。

18. D. the, /

解析：第一空“the first invention”特指“第一个发明”；第二空“transportation”是不可数名词，泛指时不用冠词。

19. A. the, a

解析：第一空“the British”指“英国人”，需加“the”；第二空“a funny people”是指，一个民族。

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

20. A. /, a

解析：第一空“mistakes”是复数名词，泛指时不用冠词；第二空“a natural part”表示“一个自然的部分”，是泛指。

21. B. a dress

解析：此处表示“穿那种裙子时她最好看”，用“a dress”泛指一类裙子。

22. D. What, quite a

解析：第一空“What did you think of...”是固定句型；第二空“quite a success”表示“相当成功”，是固定搭配。

23. C. a, the, /

解析：第一空“a slight temperature”表示“轻微发烧”；第二空“the illness”特指孩子的病；第三空“hospital treatment”是抽象概念，不用冠词。

24. D. a, the, the

解析：第一空“a wonderful time”是固定搭配；第二空“on the top of the world”是习语，表示“非常高兴”。

25. B. /, a

解析：第一空“have breakfast”是固定短语，不用冠词；第二空“a good lunch”表示“一顿丰盛的午餐”，是泛指。

## 第五课：形容词

形容词 (adj) 主要用来描写或修饰名词或代词，表示人或事物的性质、状态、特征或属性，常用作定语，也可作表语、补语或状语。

例：



一个\_\_\_\_\_男孩。

部分形容词有其独特后缀，例如：

后缀	例词		
-able, -ible	terrible 糟糕的	horrible 可怕的	comfortable 舒服的
-al, -ical	national 国家的 political 政治的	natural 自然的 chemical 化学的	typical 典型的 magical 魔法的
-ant	important 重要的	pleasant 令人愉悦的	assistant 辅助的
-ary	ordinary 普通的	necessary 必要的	secondary 次要的
-ful	beautiful 漂亮的	wonderful 精彩的	careful 细心的
-less	hopeless 没有希望的	careless 粗心的	helpless 无助的
-ly	lovely 可爱的	friendly 友善的	weekly 每周的
-ous, -ious	famous 著名的	dangerous 危险的	spacious 宽敞的
-some	handsome 潇洒的	tiresome 烦人的	troublesome 棘手的
-y	angry 生气的	hungry 饥饿的	snowy 多雪的

## 形容词位置

1. 形容词作定语通常放在它所修饰的名词前面

如：

An **intelligent** boy 一个聪明的男孩

A pair of **beautiful** little riding boots 一双漂亮的小马靴

2. 在下列情况下形容词要放在后面

1)形容词作定语修饰 some, any, every, no 和 body, thing, one 等构成的复合不定代词时，需后置，如：There is nobody **absent** today. 今天没有人缺席。

I want to tell you something **important**. 我想告诉你一些重要的事情。

2)形容词所修饰的词前面有 only, best, all 等限定性较强的定语时，

如：This is the best book **available**. 这是最好的一本书

That is the only solution **possible**. 那是唯一可行的解决办法

3)以前缀 a-开头的某些形容词，如：alike, alive, afraid, awake, aware, asleep 等，可置于被修饰的名词之后。

He was the only person **awake** at the moment. 他是那时惟一醒着的人。

4)形容词本身带不定式，介词短语等修饰语时，

如：This is a text easy to learn.这是一本容易学的课文。

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

5)形容词短语一般需后置，往往相当于定语从句。

如：We need a place twice larger than this one. 我们需要一个两倍这么大的地方。

A man so difficult to please must be hard to work with. 一个如此难以取悦的人

某些形容词作前置定语和后置定语的区别

英语中有些形容词既可作前置定语，也可作后置定语，但意义不同。

例：

the absent professor 心不在焉的教授

the professor absent 没参会的教授

the responsible government 可依赖的政府

the government responsible 应负责的政府

## 形容词顺序

在使用多个形容词描述一个被修饰词时候，形容词之间是存在先后顺序的。

我们可以用小口诀“美小圆旧黄，法国木书房”进行记忆。



## 复合形容词

- 1.数词 + 名词 (单数) one-child 独生子女的; three-hour 三小时的
- 2.数词 + 名词 (单数) three-year-old 周岁的; six-inch-tall 六英寸高的
- 3.数词+过去分词 one-handed 一只手的; two-footed 双足的
- 4.形容词 + 名词 kind-hearted 好心的; cold-blooded 无情的、冷血的; full-time 全日制的
- 5.形容词 (副词) 现在分词 ugly-looking 难看的; common-looking 相貌一般的
- 6.形容词 (副词) + 过去分词 new-born 新生的; well-dressed 衣冠楚楚的
- 7.形容词 (副词) + 形容词 dark-red 深红色的; all-round 全面的
- 8.名词 + 现在分词 life-saving 救生的; mouth-watering 令人垂涎的
- 9.名词 + 过去分词 hand-made 手工制的; heart-broken 令人心碎的
- 10.名词 + 形容词 life-long 终生的; world-famous 世界著名的

## 形容词的比较级和最高级

我们用优美的中国话交流时候，说到比较级只需要用“...比...更...”即可。英文存在细微差异，所对应的的形容词要用比较级，比如：**beautiful**——**more beautiful**，翻译为“更漂亮”，这就是比较级，非常容易拿捏。最高级的范围是三者或三者以上，表示“最...的”，比如 **beautiful**——**the most beautiful**，但，比较级和最高级变化是有规律的，我们来看一下。

### 常见规则变化

构成法	原级	比较级	最高级
一般+er, est	tall	taller	tallest
以不发音的 e 结尾, +r, st	nice	nicer	nicest
重读闭音节, 双写末尾辅音+er, est	big	bigger	biggest
以辅音+y 结尾双音节, 改 y 为 i 再+er, est	busy	busier	busiest
双元音和多音节词, 在前面加 more, 和 most	Important	more important	most important

### 常见不规则变化

原级	比较级	最高级
good/well	better	best
bad/ill	worse	worst
old	older/elder	oldest/eldest
much/many	more	most
little	less	least
far	farther(距离)	farthest
	further(距离或抽象概念)	furthest

没有比较级的形容词:

没有比较级的形容词主要包括以下几类：

1. 以 -ly 结尾的形容词，如 daily, weekly, monthly, yearly, brotherly, sisterly 等。这些形容词虽然以 -ly 结尾，但并不是所有的都是以 -ly 结尾的副词，有些是形容词，例如 friendly, lonely, lovely, likely, daily 等。
2. 表示顺序和唯一概念的形容词，如 first, last, next, following, only, unique, matchless 等。
3. 一些仅用作表语的形容词，如 afraid, ashamed, asleep, alive, awake 等。
3. 部分表示数量及不定量含义的形容词，如 twin, some, several, certain 等。
7. 表示国籍的形容词，如 Chinese, English, Japanese 等。
8. 表示方位的形容词，如 east, west 等。
9. 表示"终极"意义或绝对概念的形容词，如 absolute, blind, dead, excellent, entire, living, full, perfect, round 等。
10. 表示时间、方位或方向的形容词，如 monthly, weekly 等。
11. 部分表示事物性质、物质材料或结构成分的形容词，如 atomic, cultural, economic, educational, golden, political, scientific, silken, urban, wooden 等。
12. 本身具有"最"或"唯一"概念的形容词，如 maximal, mere, minimal, matchless, sole, only unique 等。

以上列出的形容词没有比较级和最高级。

## 形容词原级的用法

1. as...as 可表示“和...一样...”

He is as smart as his brother. 他像他兄弟一样聪明。

(可以插入比较级)

He is as smart as, or smarter than. His brother. 他像他兄弟一样聪明，甚至超过了他。

拓展：一些成语

as brave as a lion 勇猛如狮

as bright as a day 亮如白昼

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

as busy as a bee 忙的不可开交    as cheerful as a lark 兴高采烈  
as light as a feather 轻如鸿毛    as fierce as a tiger 凶猛如虎

2. 否定句中可用 not as..as 或者 not so..as 表示“不像...那样”

The problem is not as/so easy as you imagine. 问题不像你想象的那么简单。

## 形容词比较级的用法

1. 形容词比较级可以单独使用

Are you feeling better today? 你今天感觉好点了么?

2. 形容词的比较级和 than 一起用，两者表示比较

than 后可以跟:

· 名词或代词

Blood is thicker than water. 血浓于水。

· 动名词

Skiing is more exiting than skating. 滑雪比滑冰更刺激。

· 从句

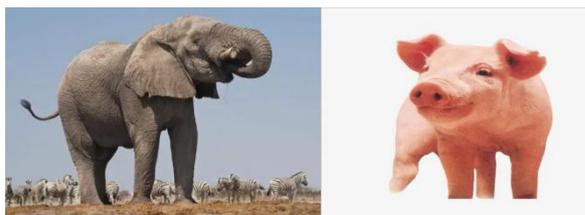
This is more than I can tell. 这是我不能说的。

· 其他成分

It's easier to do it yourself than explain it to her. 你自己干比向她解释更容易。

## 比较倍数的表达

前面我们知道了比较级是表示“更...的”，而我们研究一个这个句子（中文）：



大象比猪更大只。

An elephant is **bigger** than a pig.

基于以上，我们很容易表达一个比较型的句子，但如果想表达更精确的时候，该怎么办呢？

比如：

一只大象是猪的 10 倍大。该如何翻译呢？

小公式：

**A + 倍数+as+形容词原级+as+B**

### A+倍数-1+形容词比较级+than+B

例如：一只大象是猪的 10 倍大

根据公式：

An elephant is 10 times as big as a pig.

或

An elephant is 9 times bigger than a pig.

### 比较级的一些其他用法：

1. “the + 比较级. .., the + 比较级. ..” 表示 “越……，越……”。

the harder you work, the better grades you will get.

2. “否定式谓语 + 比较级” 有最高级的含义。

Your story is perfect; I've never heard a better one before.

你的故事太完美了，我从来没有听到比这更好听的故事。

3. 用 the last 表示 “最不可能的”、“最不适合的”、“最不希望的”等。

The last thing I want to do is to offend you.

我最不想做的事情是冒犯你。

### 几种带有否定词的比较句型

(1)no better than 表示 “和……一样；实际等于……”。

The patient is no better than he was yesterday.

病人的情况和昨天一样。

(2)no less...than 表示 “和……一样，不逊于”。

The technique of writing is no less difficult than that of the other arts.

写作技巧和其他艺术技巧一样困难。

### 最高级的用法

1. 三者或三者以上相比，表示最高程度时，用 “the + 最高级” 的结构表示。这种句式一般常有表示比较范围的介词短语。

例：Zhang Hua is the tallest of the three. 张华在他们三个中是最高的。

2. 表示 “最高程度” 的形容词，如 excellent, perfect 等，没有最高级，也不能用比较级。

3. “否定词语+比较级”，“否定词语+ so... as” 结构表示最高级含义。

例：Nothing is so easy as this. =Nothing is easier than this. =This is the easiest thing.

4. 形容词最高级修饰作表语或介词宾语的名词、代词时，被修饰的词往往省略。

例：He is the tallest (boy) in his class. 他是班里最高的（男生）。

5. 作状语的副词最高级前可以不加定冠词。

例：of all the boys he came (the) earliest 在所有的孩子中，他来得最早。

6. 比较级与最高级的转换：

例：Mike is the most intelligent in his class.

Mike is more intelligent than any other student in his class.

## 修饰比较级和最高级的词

1) 可修饰比较级的词

①. a bit, a little, rather, much, far, by far, many, a lot, a great deal, any, still, even 等。

②. 还可以用表示倍数的词或度量名词作修饰语。

③. 以上词 (除 by far) 外，必须置于比较级形容词或副词的前面。

注意：使用最高级要注意将主语包括在比较范围内。

(错) Tom is the tallest of his three brothers.

(对) Tom is the tallest of the three brothers.

2) 下列词可修饰最高级：by far, far, much, mostly, almost.

This hat is nearly / almost the biggest in this shop. 这应该是店里最大的帽子。注意：

a. very 可修饰最高级，但位置与 much 不同。

This is the very best.

This is much the best.

b. 序数词通常只修饰最高级。

Africa is the second largest continent.

## 形容词与介词的搭配

about	be anxious about 对...感到焦虑 be sorry about 对...感到遗憾 be careful about 小心... be sure about 对...有把握 be certain about 对...有把握 be worried about 担忧...
at	be expert at 在...方面有专长 be surprised at 对...感到惊奇 be angry at 对...生气 be good at 在...方面擅长 be clever at 对...方面聪明 be experienced at 具有...经验
for	be famous for/be well-known for 由于...而著名 be ready for 准备好... be sorry for 为...感到抱歉 be good/bad for 对...有好/坏处 be fit for 适合... be anxious for 为...而担心
in	be interested in 对...感兴趣 be weak in 在...方面薄弱 be poor in 在..方面薄弱 be different in 在...方面不同 be rich in 富含... be experienced in 在...方面有经验
of	be afraid of 害怕... be certain of 对..有把握 be fond of 喜欢.. be proud of 为...感到自豪 be careful of 对...小心 be full of 充满.. be short of 短缺... be ashamed of 对...感到羞耻
to	be kind to 对...和蔼 be useful to 对...有用 be nice to 对...友好 be rude to 对...粗鲁 be polite to 对...有礼貌 be bad to 对..不好

	be familiar to 对...熟悉
with	be angry with 对...生气 be careful with 处理...时小心 be busy with 忙于... be satisfied with 对...感到满意 be familiar with 对...熟悉 be pleased with 对...感到满意 be patient with 对...有耐心 be strict with 对...要求严格

## 作业与练习

### 基础训练

- Are you afraid of dogs?  
—Yes. I'm \_\_\_\_\_ of them.  
A. surprised      B. terrified      C. embarrassed      D. excited
- It's dangerous \_\_\_\_\_ with the wild animal.  
A. for us to play      B. of us playing      C. for us playing      D. of us to play
- Let's go shopping at the new mall.  
— Why not shop online? It's \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. expensive      B. more expensive      C. less expensive      D. the most expensive
- If there is \_\_\_\_\_ pollution, the air in our city will be \_\_\_\_\_ dirtier.  
A. less; more      B. more; much      C. less; less      D. more; more
- Yummy! The coffee is good.  
— That's right. It will taste \_\_\_\_\_ with some milk.  
A. well      B. better      C. best      D. the best
- Peter has good grades in all his subjects, but he never shows off.  
— I agree. He is very \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. easy-going      B. imaginative      C. modest      D. generous
- Don't just believe the advertisement. That medicine is \_\_\_\_\_ it says.  
A. as good as      B. not as good as      C. as well as      D. not as well as
- Did you have a wonderful time at the party?

- Yes, it's \_\_\_\_\_ one I've ever been to before.  
A. a more excited      B. a more exciting  
C. the most excited      D. the most exciting
9. Taking buses in Beijing is \_\_\_\_\_ than taking a taxi.  
A. more cheap      B. much cheaper      C. a little cheap      D. cheaper
10. Look! Linyi is \_\_\_\_\_ now than it used to be.  
A. quite beautiful      B. the most beautiful  
C. very beautiful      D. much more beautiful
11. — I'm going to a job interview. I feel a little \_\_\_\_\_.  
— Take it easy. Listening to music can help you relax.  
A. comfortable      B. nervous      C. excited      D. shy
12. I don't feel very \_\_\_\_\_ today.  
A. good      B. well      C. nice      D. fine
13. I think English is as \_\_\_\_\_ as math.  
A. important      B. more important      C. most important      D. importanter
14. John Smith is \_\_\_\_\_ of the two young men.  
A. strong      B. stronger      C. the stronger      D. the strongest
15. The Changjiang River is one of the \_\_\_\_\_ in China.  
A. longer river      B. longest river      C. longest rivers      D. long rivers

### 提升训练

1. John has three sisters. Mary is the \_\_\_ of the three.  
A. most cleverest      B. more clever      C. cleverest      D. cleverer
2. The students are \_\_\_ young people between the age of sixteen and twenty.  
A. most      B. almost      C. mostly      D. at most
3. She told us \_\_\_ story that we all forgot about the time.  
A. such an interesting      B. such interesting a  
C. so an interesting      D. a so interesting

4. It is impossible for so \_\_\_ workers to do so \_\_\_ work in a single day.  
A. few, much      B. few, many      C. little, much      D. little, many
5. The horse is getting old and can't run \_\_\_ it did.  
A. as faster as      B. so fast than      C. so fast as      D. as fast as
6. The story sounds \_\_\_\_ .  
A. to be true      B. as true      C. being true      D. true
7. I'd been expecting \_\_\_ letters the whole morning, but there weren't \_\_\_ for me.  
A. some; any      B. many; a few      C. some; one      D. a few; none
8. This year they have produced \_\_\_ grain \_\_\_ they did last year.  
A. as less; as      B. as few; as      C. less; than      D. fewer; than
9. After the new technique was introduced, the factory produced \_\_\_ tractors in 1988 as the year before.  
A. as twice many      B. as many twice  
C. twice as many      D. twice many as
10. The pianos in the other shop will be \_\_\_\_\_ , but \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. cheaper; not as better      B. more cheaper; not as better  
C. cheaper; not as good      D. more cheap; not as good
11. ---Can I help you?  
---Well, I'm afraid the box is \_\_\_ heavy for you, but thank you all the same.  
A. so      B. much      C. very      D. too
12. ---Excuse me, is this Mr. Brown's office?  
---I'm sorry, but Mr. Brown \_\_\_ works here. He left about three weeks ago.  
A. not now      B. no more      C. not still      D. no longer
13. If we had followed his plan, we could have done the job better with \_\_\_ money and \_\_\_ people.  
A. less; less      B. fewer; fewer      C. less; fewer      D. fewer; less
14. Oh, John. \_\_\_ you gave me!  
A. How a pleasant surprise      B. How pleasant surprise  
C. What a pleasant surprise      D. What pleasant surprise
15. ---How did you find your visit to museum?  
---I thoroughly enjoyed it. It was \_\_\_ than I expected.  
A. far more interesting      B. even much interesting  
C. so more interesting      D. a lot much interesting
16. Canada is larger than \_\_\_ country in Asia.  
A. any      B. any other      C. other      D. another
17. Those oranges taste \_\_\_\_ .  
A. good      B. well      C. to be good      D. to be well

18. The experiment was \_\_\_ easier than we had expected.  
A. more      B. much more      C. much      D. more much
19. \_\_\_ food you've cooked!  
A. How a nice      B. What a nice  
C. How nice      D. What nice
20. Go and get your coat. It's \_\_\_ you left it.  
A. there      B. where      C. there where      D. where there
21. John was so sleepy that he could hardly keep his eyes\_\_\_.  
A. open      B. to be opened      C. to open      D. opening
22. ---Are you feeling \_\_\_?  
---Yes, I' m fine now.  
A. any well      B. any better      C. quite good      D. quite better
23. Which is\_\_\_ country, Canada or Australia?  
A. a large      B. larger      C. a larger      D. the larger
24. ---Will you give this message to Mr. White, please?  
---Sorry, I can't. He \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. doesn't any more work here      B. doesn't any longer here work  
C. doesn't work any more here      D. doesn't work here any longer
25. How \_\_\_can you finish the drawing?  
A. often      B. soon      C. long      D. rapid

### 答案与解析

#### 基础训练

1. B. 由“Yes”可知对方害怕狗，be afraid of 同义短语是“be terrified of”，意为“对……恐惧/害怕”。
2. A. 考查句式“It is for sb. to do sth”意为“做某事对于某人怎么样”。
3. C. 本题考查 expensive 的比较级，more expensive 意为“更贵”，less expensive 意为“更便宜”。
4. B. 句意为“如果有更多的污染，城市就会越脏”。第一空用 much 的比较级 more 修饰 pollution，第二空用 much 修饰 dirty 的比较级，强化比较程度。
5. B. 本题考查表语形容词的比较级，good 的比较级是 better。
6. C. 本题考查表语形容词的意义。选项意义分别是：easy-going 容易相处的；imaginative 有想象力的；modest 谦逊的；generous 慷慨大方的。由 never show off (从不炫耀) 可知选 C 项。
7. B. 本题考查形容词原级的句式“not as/so...as...”句式，意为“和……不一样”。
8. D. 由答语“...one I've ever been to before”可知“这是我曾经去过的最兴奋的晚会”。所以选形容词的最高级 the most exciting。
9. B. 本句子是考查形容词比较级的用法，much 修饰比较级 cheaper，指“便宜得很”。所以选择 B。

10. D. 本句子是考查形容词比较级的用法，much 修饰比较级 more beautiful，指“漂亮多了”。所以选择 D。
11. B. 本题考查表语形容词的不同意义，由句意可知“感到有点紧张”故选 B。
12. B. 本题考查形容词的用法，在连系动词的后面用形容词作表语，但从句子的意思理解只能用形容词 well 表示“身体好”。
13. A. 本题考查形容词比较等级的用法，在同级比较时候用 as + 形容词的原级 + as...结构，所以中间用形容词 important。
14. C. 在两者比较的范围内，比较强壮的那一个是特指，要用定冠词 the + 比较级表示。
15. C. 本题考查形容词的最高级和短语 one of + 名词复数形式的用法，表示“最长的河流之一”的意思，所以选择 C。

### 提升训练

1. C. cleverest

解析：三者及以上比较用最高级，"cleverest" 或 "most clever" 均可。

2. C. mostly

解析："mostly" = 主要地（指大部分学生是 16-20 岁）。

3. A. such an interesting

解析："such + a/an + adj. + n." 结构，"so" 修饰形容词/副词。

4. A. few, much

解析：workers（可数）用 "few"，work（不可数）用 "much"。

5. D. as fast as

解析：否定句中用 "as...as" 或 "so...as"，"fast" 是副词原级。

6. D. true

解析："sound"（听起来）是系动词，后接形容词 "true"。

7. A. some; any

解析："some" 用于肯定句，"any" 用于否定句。

8. C. less; than

解析：grain（不可数）用 "less"，比较级后用 "than"。

9. C. twice as many

解析：倍数表达：倍数 + as many/much as，"tractors" 可数，用 "many"。

10. C. cheaper; not as good

解析：比较级 "cheaper"，"not as good as" 的省略形式。

11. D. too

解析："too...for sb." 表示“对某人来说太...”。

12. D. no longer

解析："no longer" = 不再（强调状态）。

13. C. less; fewer

解析：money（不可数）用 "less"，people（可数）用 "fewer"。

14. C. What a pleasant surprise

解析："surprise" 可数，用 "What a + adj. + n." 结构。

15. A. far more interesting

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

解析：比较级前可用 "far/much/a lot" 加强语气，"interesting" 用 "more interesting"。

16. A. any

解析：Canada 不属于亚洲，直接与 "any country in Asia" 比较，不用 "other"。

17. A. good

解析："taste" (尝起来) 是系动词，后接形容词 "good"。

18. C. much

解析："easier" 已是比较级，用 "much" 修饰程度。

19. D. What nice

解析："food" 不可数，用 "What + adj. + n."，不加冠词。

20. B. where

解析："where" 引导表语从句，表示地点。

21. A. open

解析："keep + sth. + adj."，"open" 是形容词表示“睁开的”。

22. B. any better

解析："any + 比较级" 用于疑问/否定句，询问是否好些。

23. D. the larger

解析：两者比较用比较级，特指两者中较大的一个，加 "the"。

24. D. doesn't work here any longer

解析："not...any longer" = 不再，语序正确。

25. B. soon

解析：问“多久能完成”，用 "soon" (多快)。

## 第六课：副词

副词 (Adverb) 是在句子中表示行为或状态特征的词类。副词可以用来修饰动词、形容词、其他副词或者全句，表示时间、地点、方式、程度等概念。

### 副词的类型

#### 1. 时间副词

表示发生时间和表示频繁程度的副词

I have heard from her *recently*. 我最近收到她的来信。

I am going to meet KUN *soon*. 我马上要去见坤坤啦。

The love of money and the love of learning *rarely* meet. 贪财者不勤学，勤学者不贪财。

#### 2. 地点副词

表示地点和位置的副词称为地点副词

She is *upstairs* talking with my parents. 她正在楼上和我父母谈话。

Do you know *anywhere* I can buy a second-hand computer. 你知道我在哪里可以买到二

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

手电筒么？

(注：where 构成的副词是地点副词)

There are people who want to be *everywhere* at once and they seem to get *nowhere*.

有一些人他们想马上去每一个地方，但看起来哪儿也没去。

If she doesn't like it here, she can go *elsewhere*.

如果她不喜欢这里，她可以去别的地方。

### 3. 方式副词

描述事情或情况的进行方式/存在方式，动作发生的情况或细节的副词称为方式副词，一般用 how 提问

They hope to see the problem settled *peacefully*. 他们希望这个问题和平解决。

There is no man so bad, but he *secretly* respects the good.

再坏的人都会暗自尊重好人。

Laugh the world laughs with you; weep and you *alone*.

笑，全世界和你一起笑；哭，你独自一人哭。

### 4. 程度副词

用来描述动作，行为或状态的程度的副词

I *quite* agree. 我完全同意。

You're *entirely* wrong. 你完全错了。

### 5. 疑问副词

疑问副词主要用来构成特殊疑问句

*Where* do you go to school? 你在哪里上学？

*When* shall we meet again? 我们什么时候再见面？

*Why* were you absent from class yesterday? 你昨天为什么旷课？

*How* is your grandpa's insomnia? 你爷爷的失眠怎么样了？

## 副词的构成

变化	例子	变化	例子
直接加 ly	perfect--perfectly quick--quickly	-y 结尾的词，读音为 /i/，改 y 为 i 再加 ly	easy--easily lucky--luckily
le 结尾的词，去 e 加 y	able--ably terrible--terribly	-y 结尾的词，读音为 /ai/，直接加 ly	dry--dryly shy--shyly
ue 结尾的词，去 e 加 y	true--truly due--duly	e 结尾直接加 ly	close-closely sensitive--sensitively
ic 结尾的，加 ally	classic--classically historic--historically	介词 / 地点名 加 wards	backwards onwards

## 副词的比较级和最高级

副词比较级和最高级的构成和形容词比较级和最高级的构成一样，此处简单列举：

### 1. 规则变化

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

原级	比较级	最高级
hard	harder	hardest
late	later	latest
early	earlier	earliest
carefully	more carefully	most carefully

## 2. 不规则变化

原级	比较级	最高级
well	better	best
badly	worse	worst
much	more	most
little	less	least
far	farther(距离)	farthest
	further(距离或抽象概念)	furthest

## 副词的位置

### 引例:

He is fluent in English.

He speaks fluent English.

He speaks English fluently.

The boy found his mother happy.

The boy found his mother happily.

### 修饰形容词时

副词修饰形容词，副词时，一般位于被修饰词前面，**enough** 总是置于被修饰词之后

例: She is **very** beautiful. 她很漂亮。

Computers work **much** faster than before. 计算机的速度比之前快多了。

The house is large **enough** for us to live in. 那个房子给我们住，足够大了。

注: **enough** 作为形容词时需要放在名词前面

例: We haven't **enough** time. 我们的时间不够。

### 修饰动词时

**时间副词**: 可以放在句首，句末。

例:

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

*Yesterday*, I met my classmate when I was shopping with my wife.

昨天我在和妻子购物的时候，遇到了同学。

I played basketball with KUN *yesterday*.

我昨天和坤坤一起打篮球。

**地点副词：**地点副词通常用在句末，也可以用在句首，但一般不用在主语和谓语动词之间。

请看例句：

a. They are playing upstairs.(他们正在楼上玩耍。)

这里是地点副词 *upstairs* 放在句末。

b. There is a river behind my house. (我家后面有一条河。)

这里是地点副词短语 *behind my house* 放在句末。也可以放到句首：

c. Behind my house there is a river.

另外，出现在句首的地点状语往往伴随着句子结构用全部倒装，比如：

d. Behind my house flows a river.

**程度副词：**在修饰形容词和副词时，应该放在形容词和副词前面，在修饰动词时，放在第一个助动词后，实义动词之前

例：

You are such a likeable person. I *greatly* enjoy working with you.

你真可爱，我很喜欢和你一起工作。

The day I met her, I *entirely* fell in love with her.

我见到她的那天，我就完全爱上了她。

**方式副词：**（五种基本句型分析）

主语+不及物动词

请看例句：

a. He moved quickly.(他很快就走开了。)

此时（即主谓句型中），方式副词要放在动词之后，不能放在动词之前（或者罕见），比如

一般不会说：

b. He quickly moved.

b 句看起来比较奇怪。对于其他的副词，动词之前或之后的位置可能会改变句意，比如前面说

过的 *simply live* 和 *live simply* 意思就完全不同。

但是，如果不及物动词接了其他的状语，则副词可以放在动词之后或之前。比如：

a. He moved quickly toward the window.(他快速地朝窗户走去。)

此时可以把 *quickly* 放到 *moved* 前面：

b. He quickly moved toward the window.

这是对 *quickly* 进行强调。当然还可以把 *quickly* 放到句末：

c. He moved toward the window quickly.

相比之下，c 句不像 b 句那样对 quickly 有强调意味。

#### 主语+及物动词+宾语

请看例句：

a. He moved the ball quickly.(他快速传球。)

像 a 句这样把方式副词放在句末总是比较安全，句末是常规的位置。也可以放到动词之前：

b. He quickly moved the ball.

但不能把方式副词放到动词与宾语之间，比如不能说：

c. He moved quickly the ball.

请把这里的 c 句与上文中的“**He moved quickly toward the window.**”进行比较，可见，方式副词可以放在动词和状语之间，但不能放在动词和宾语之间。我们还可以在 a 句的基础上添加其他状语，

比如：

d. He moved the ball quickly toward the goal.(他把球快速地移向球门。)

也可以把 quickly 放到句末：

e. He moved the ball toward the goal quickly.

但依然不能把副词放在宾语之前，不能说：

f. He moved quickly the ball toward the goal.

除非是与动词一起构成短语动词（如 pick up），可以放在动词和名词宾语之间。比如：

a. He picked up the book.(他把书捡了起来。)

这里的宾语是名词短语 the book。也可以把 up 放到句末：

b. He picked the book up.

注意，如果宾语不是名词，而是代词，则只能放到副词之前，说成：

c. He picked it up.

不能说：

d. He picked up it.

#### 主语+及物动词+间接宾语+直接宾语

请看例句：

a. He reluctantly gave me that book.(他十分不情愿地把那本书给了我。)

这里的 me 是间接宾语，that book 是直接宾语。方式副词 reluctantly 放在了动词 gave 之前，也可以放到句末，但不能放到 gave 或 me 之后。

#### 主语+及物动词+宾语+宾语补足语

请看例句：

b. I happily pronounce you man and wife.(我很高兴宣布你们结为夫妇。)

这里的 you 是宾语，man and wife 是宾语补足语。方式副词 happily 放在了动词 pronounce 之前，也可以放到句末，但不能放在 pronounce 或 you 之后。

#### 主语+系动词+表语

请看例句：

a. John gets angry easily.(约翰很容易生气。)

这里的 gets 是系动词，后接形容词 angry 作表语，然后 gets angry 被方式副词 easily 修

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

饰。也可

以把 **easily** 放到动词之前:

b. John **easily** gets angry.

但不能把副词放在系动词和表语之间 (这就如同副词不能置于动词和宾语之间), 不能说:

c. John gets **easily** angry.

综上所述, 关于方式副词位置的一个**基本原则**是: 方式副词不能分隔动词与其后面的宾语、双宾语或补足语 (包括主语补足语或宾语补足语) 这些必要的句子成分。这些成分是句子的必要成分, 而方式状语只是句子的可选成分, 句子的必要成分与动词的关系自然要比状语与动词的关系更加密切。因此, 在没有这些必要成分时, 方式副词就放在动词之后; 如果有这些必要成分, 方式副词就让位于这些必要成分而被挤到这些成分之后, 或者放到动词之前。

**另外一个基本原则**是: 如果句中有不止一个动词, 那么方式副词应尽量紧靠它所修饰的动词, 从而避免因修饰对象模糊而导致句子歧义。

**频度副词**: 表示某事发生的频率, 通俗地说就是次数。比如:

a. I **sometimes** walk my dog after dinner.(我有时吃完晚饭会去遛狗。)

这里的 **sometimes** 就是一个频率副词, 意为“有时”, 表示“晚饭后遛狗”这件事是时常发生的, 但不是“总是(**always**)”, 也不是“从不(**never**)”, 即 **sometimes** 的频率处于 **always** 和 **never** 之间。可见, 不同的频率副词有频率大小的差异。从高频到低频的排序大致如下:

频率大小	100%	90%	80%	70%	50%	30%	10%	5%	0%
频率副词	always	usually	frequently	often	sometimes	occasionally	seldom	rarely	never

全频:always

几乎全频:usually, normally, generally

高频:frequently,often

中频:sometimes, occasionally

低频:seldom, rarely, not.often, hardly ever

零频:never, not..ever

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

三种位置	句中具体位置	频率副词
句首位置	可以放在句首的副词	normally, usually, generally, frequently, sometimes, occasionally, often, 以及各种频率短语。
	不能直接放在句首的副词	always, ever, rarely, seldom, never
句中位置	放在助动词的否定式之前	sometimes, frequently (usually 也可以)
	放在助动词的否定式之后	always, ever, often, normally, usually, generally
句末位置	句末	normally, usually, generally, frequently, sometimes, occasionally, very often, quite often, 以及各种频率短语 (比如 once in a while 等)

	句中具体位置	例句
肯定句	be 动词之后	She is always busy on weekends.
	助动词之后	She does often get up early. She has always done this for a living.
	情态动词之后	She can always rely on me.
	实义动词之前	She always gets up early on weekends.
否定句	not 之后	She doesn't usually get up early on weekends. 其他的副词: always, ever, often, normally, generally
	not 之前	She sometimes doesn't get up early on weekends. 其他的副词: frequently 另外, usually 也可以在 not 之前, 但不如在 not 之后多见: She usually doesn't get up early on weekends.

### 连接副词:

1) 如果连接的是两个独立的句子（前面是句号），连接副词首字母大写

例:

KUN is very kind to his fans. *However/Nevertheless/Still*, many people dislike him.

鸽鸽对他的粉丝很好，但是很多人还是不喜欢他。

2) 如果连接的是两个对等的句子（前面用分号），连接副词不用大写

例:

The price is too high; *moreover*, the house isn't in a suitable position.

房子的价钱太高，而且地点不合适。

3) *hence, then, thus, so, yet* 之后不需要逗号

例:

It is very late; *hence* you must go to bed. 时间很晚了，你必须睡觉了。

4) 对等连接副词可以用 *and* 连接

例:

The site has a number of disadvantages, and *furthermore*, the price asked is quite high.

这地方有许多不利的条件，并且索要的价格也高。

### 兼有两种形式的副词

1) *close* 与 *closely*

*close* 意思是“近的”，*closely* 意思是“仔细地”

He is sitting close to me. 他坐得离我很近。

Watch him closely. 仔细盯着他。

2) *late* 与 *lately*

*late* 意思是“晚的”；*lately* 意思是“最近的”

You have come too late. 你来晚了。

What have you been doing lately? 最近在忙些什么？

3) *deep* 与 *deeply*

*deep* 意思是“深的”，表示空间深度，*deeply* 时常表示感情上的深度

He pushed the stick deep into the mud. 他把棍子深深地插进泥里。

My father was deeply moved by the film. 我父亲深深地被这部电影感动了。

4) *high* 与 *highly*

*high* 表示空间高度；*highly* 表示程度，相当于 *much*

The plane was flying high. 这架飞机飞得很高。

I think/speak highly of your opinion. 我对你的观点给以高度评价。

5) *wide* 与 *widely*

*wide* 表示空间宽度；*widely* 意思是“广泛地，在许多地方”。

He opened the door wide. 他将门开得很大。

English is widely used in the world. 英语在世界上被广泛使用。

6) *free* 与 *freely*

*free* 的意思是“免费”；*freely* 的意思是“无限制地”

You can eat free in my restaurant whenever you like. 你随时都可以在我的餐厅免费用餐。

You may speak freely: say what you like? 你可以随意说你想说的。

## 多个副词的排列顺序

1. 时间副词和地点副词同时出现，时间副词置于地点副词之后，时间副词和地点副词可以同时放在句末，也可以一个句首一个句末，但不能同时放在句首。

例：

We are going to travel *globally very soon*. 我们很快就要去环球旅行咯。

*Yesterday* we met the stranger *there*. 昨天我们在那里遇到那个陌生人。

2. 几个方式副词并列时，一般短的在前，长的在后，并且用 **and** 或者 **but** 等词连接

例：

Please write *slowly and carefully*. 请慢慢地认真地写。

3. 多个副词修饰动词作状语时，其顺序一般为“程度+地点+时间”

例：

I will travel *by airplane to Japan next week*.

She sang the song *beautifully at the concert last Sunday*.

## 作业与练习

### 基础训练

1. —How often do the students play sports?

—\_\_\_\_\_.

A. Twice a day    B. Since last night    C. For two hours    D. A month ago

2. I play basketball every day because I want to play as \_\_\_\_\_ as Yao Ming.

A. well    B. better    C. best    D. good

3. — How often do you exercise?

— \_\_\_\_\_ ever. Because I am very busy with my work.

A. Hardly    B. Nearly    C. Always    D. Almost

4. At the sports meeting, Simon jumped as \_\_\_\_\_ as Daniel.

A. high    B. higher    C. slow    D. slower

5. — Mr. Smith, would you please speak a little more \_\_\_\_\_?

— Sorry! I thought you would follow me.

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

- A. slowly      B. politely      C. seriously      D. clearly
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ ride a bike to school. But this morning I took a taxi because I got up late.  
A. never      B. sometimes      C. seldom      D. usually
7. Jane didn't do \_\_\_\_\_ in the exam, but her exam results are \_\_\_\_\_ than it was last year.  
A. bad; worse      B. good; better      C. well; better      D. well; worse
8. Which animal do you like \_\_\_\_\_, a cat or a dog?  
A. very much      B. best      C. better      D. well
9. My brother likes watching TV very much. He stays in front of the TV for \_\_\_\_\_ two hours every day.  
A. less than      B. more than      C. little than      D. much than
10. The boy doesn't speak \_\_\_\_\_ his sister, but his written work is very good.  
A. as well as      B. so good as      C. more better than      D. more worse than
11. — How \_\_\_\_\_ will the boss be back?  
— In these days.  
A. far      B. soon      C. long      D. often
12. No matter what happens, the fact that Huangyan Island belongs to China will \_\_\_\_\_ change.  
A. ever      B. never      C. still      D. hardly
13. I don't think fast food is good for our health, so I \_\_\_\_\_ go to MacDonald. A. seldom  
B. always      C. usually      D. often
14. — Why are you driving so \_\_\_\_\_. Tony? I'm feeling sick.  
— Sorry, but the train is leaving in 20 minutes. We have to hurry.  
A. often      B. fast      C. hard      D. slowly
15. The fire last night destroyed many buildings. \_\_\_\_\_, no one was killed.  
A. Actually      B. Simply      C. Luckily      D. Immediately
- 用括号中所给词的适当形式填空。
1. My purse was stolen on the bus yesterday. \_\_\_\_\_ (Fortunate), there was no money in it.      2. Mobile phones are \_\_\_\_\_ (wide) used in most of the cities in China.  
3. He put on his coat and went out \_\_\_\_\_ (quick).  
4. She is \_\_\_\_\_ (good) than Li Ping at swimming.  
5. A lot Chinese people are \_\_\_\_\_ (pride) of Yao Ming, a famous basketball star in NBA.  
6. To our surprise, he suddenly returned on a cold \_\_\_\_\_ (snow) night.  
7. Allie asked me \_\_\_\_\_ (polite) to put the things away.

8. It's snowing hard. You must drive \_\_\_\_\_(careful).  
9. The earth we live on is \_\_\_\_\_ (big) than the moon.  
10. Hainan is a very large island. It's the second \_\_\_\_\_ (large) island in China.

提升训练

1. \_\_\_ terrible weather we've been having these days!  
A. How a      B. What a      C. How      D. What
2. It takes a long time to go there by train. It's\_\_\_ by road.  
A. quick      B. the quickest      C. much quick      D. quicker
3. \_\_\_ from Beijing to London!  
A. How long way it is      B. What a long way is it  
C. How long way is it      D. What a long way it is
4. She doesn't speak\_\_\_ her friends, but her written work is excellent.  
A. as well as      B. as often as      C. so much as      D. as good as
5. ---Mum, I think I'm\_\_\_ to get back to school.  
---Not really, My dear. You'd better stay at home for another day or two.  
A. so well      B. so good      C. well enough      D. good enough
6. ---If you don't like the red coat, take the blue one.  
---OK, but do you have size\_\_\_ in blue? This one's a bit tight for me.  
A. a big      B. a bigger      C. the big      D. the bigger
7. John plays football\_\_\_ , if not better than, David.  
A. as well      B. as well as      C. so well      D. so well as
8. We all write\_\_\_ ,even when there's net much to say.  
A. now and then      B. by and by      C. step by step      D. more or less
9. ---Do you remember \_\_\_ he came?  
---Yes I do, he came by car.  
A. how      B. when      C. that      D. if
10. If there were no examinations, we should have \_\_\_at school.  
A. the happiest time      B. a more happier time  
C. much happiest time      D. a much happier time
11. ---Have you finished your report yet?  
---No, I'll finish in\_\_\_ ten minutes.  
A. another      B. other      C. more      D. less

- 12 ---I'd like \_\_\_ information about the management of your hotel, please.  
---Well, you could have \_\_\_ word with the manager. He might be helpful.  
A. some; a      B. an; some      C. some; some      D. an; a
13. If we work with a strong will, we can overcome any difficulty, \_\_\_ great it is.  
A. what      B. how      C. however      D. whatever
14. We decided not to climb the mountains because it was raining \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. badly      B. hardly      C. strongly      D. heavily
15. How beautifully she sings! I have never heard \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. the better voice      B. a good voice  
C. the best voice      D. a better voice
16. Tony is going camping with \_\_\_ boys.  
A. little two other      B. two little other  
C. two other little      D. little other two
17. ---How was your recent visit to Qingdao?  
---It was great. We visited some friends, and spent \_\_\_ the days at the seaside.  
A. few last sunny      B. last few sunny  
C. last sunny few      D. few sunny last
18. Can you believe that in \_\_\_ a rich country there should be \_ many poor people?  
A. such; such      B. such; so      C. so; so      D. so; such
19. Wait till you are more \_\_\_. It's better to be sure than sorry.  
A. inspired      B. satisfied      C. calm      D. certain
20. Professor White has written some short stories, but he is \_\_\_ known for his plays.  
A. the best      B. more      C. better      D. the most
21. \_\_\_ to take this adventure course will certainly learn a lot of useful skills.  
A. Brave enough students      B. Enough brave students  
C. Students brave enough      D. Students enough brave
22. It's always difficult being in a foreign country, \_\_\_ if you don't speak the language.  
A. extremely      B. naturally      C. basically      D. especially
23. I am surprised that you should have been fooled by such a (an) \_\_\_ trick.  
A. ordinary      B. easy      C. smart      D. simple
24. It is generally believed that teaching is \_\_\_ it is a science.

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

- A. an art much as      B. much an art as  
C. as an art much as      D. as much an art as

25. ---I'm very \_\_\_with my own cooking. It looks nice and smells delicious.

---Mm, it does have a \_\_\_smell.

- A. pleasant; pleased      B. pleased; pleased  
C. pleasant; pleasant      D. pleased; pleasant

## 答案与解析

### 基础练习

1. A. 考查疑问副词短语的答语。上文用 **how often** (多久一次) 提问，下文需是表频度的答语。故选 A。 **twice a day** 意为“每天两次”。
2. A. **as.....as** 是同级比较，中间要用形容词或副词的原级，**well** 是副词，修饰 **play**。故选 A。
3. A. **hardly ever** 意为“不曾”，句意为“因为我忙于工作，不曾锻炼”。
4. A. 本题考查副词的原级用法，句式是 **as high as** 意为“和.....一样高”。
5. A. 本题考查副词的比较级，**a little** 修饰副词比较级，强调程度。由答语“**Sorry! I thought you would follow me**”可知选择 A。
6. D. 本题考查副词的频率，由句意“我通常骑车去学校，今天起晚了打车去学校”可知选 **usually**。
7. C. 本题考查形容词和副词的用法，第一个空用副词 **well** 修饰动词 **do**，构成短语 **do well in** 表示在某方面做得好；第二个空用形容词的比较级表示和去年成绩的比较，用 **better**。
8. C. 本题考查副词的比较级的用法，从句子的 **a cat or a dog** 可以理解是两者比较，所以用副词的比较级。
9. B. 本题考查短语 **more than** 的用法，它的意思是超过，相当于 **over**。**less than** 意思为“不足、不到”。
10. A. 本题考查句式 **not as...as...**，表示“和.....不一样”。中间只能接形容词或副词原级，本句修饰 **speak**，只能用副词 **well**，所以选 A。
11. B. **how soon** 意为“多久”，用在将来时态中，常用“**in+一段时间**”回答。
12. B. 句意为“无论发生什么事，黄岩岛属于中国的事实是从不会改变的”。**never** 意为“从不”。
13. A. **seldom** 意为“不常，很少”，根据句意“我认为快餐对我们健康不好，所以我不常去”。
14. B. 由句意可知“托尼开车太快，我感觉不舒服”，所以用 **fast**。
15. C. 句意为“昨晚大火破毁了许多建筑物，幸运得是没人遇难”。**luckily** 意为“幸运地”。用括号中所给词的适当形式填空。

1. Fortunately    2. widely      3. quickly      4. better      5. proud  
6. snowy      7. politely      8. carefully      9. bigger      10. largest

### 提升训练

1. D. What

解析: **weather** 是不可数名词，感叹句结构为“**What +形容词+不可数名词**”，不能用“**a**”。

2. D. quicker

解析：前后比较，坐火车时间长，公路更快，用比较级。

3. D. What a long way it is

解析：感叹句结构，way 是可数名词，用 "What a + 形容词 + 名词"。

4. A. as well as

解析：指 "说得不如朋友好"，用 as well as (能力或效果上的比较)。

5. C. well enough

解析：well 指身体恢复得好，enough 修饰形容词后置。

6. B. a bigger

解析：需要更大尺码，用比较级，且 size 前用不定冠词表示泛指。

7. B. as well as

解析：as well as 表示 "和.....一样好"，if not better 是比较的插入语。

8. A. now and then

解析：意为 "时不时写点东西"，其他选项不符语境。

9. A. how

解析：回答 "by car" 说明问的是方式，用 how。

10. D. a much happier time

解析：虚拟语气，与现在事实相反，用比较级，much 修饰比较级。

11. A. another

解析：another + 数字表示 "再....."，其他选项用法错误。

12. A. some; a

解析：information 不可数，用 some; have a word with 是固定搭配。

13. C. however

解析：however + 形容词表示 "无论多么....."，引导让步状语从句。

14. D. heavily

解析：rain heavily 是固定搭配，指雨下得大。

15. D. a better voice

解析：否定 + 比较级表示最高级，"从未听过更好的" 即 "这是最好的"。

16. C. two other little

解析：限定词顺序：数量 (two) + other + 描述 (little) + 名词。

17. B. last few sunny

解析：顺序：last (限定) + few (数量) + sunny (描述) + 名词。

18. B. such; so

解析：such 修饰名词 (a rich country)，so 修饰形容词或副词 (many)。

19. D. certain

解析：句意 "等更确定时再行动"，certain 符合语境。

20. C. better

解析：but 转折，短故事不如戏剧出名，用比较级。

21. C. Students brave enough

解析：形容词短语 brave enough 后置修饰 students。

22. D. especially

解析：强调 "尤其不会语言时更难"，其他选项不符。

23. D. simple

解析：simple trick 指 "简单的伎俩"，与 "被愚弄" 形成反差。

24. D. as much an art as

解析: as much...as 结构, art 是单数需加冠词。

25. D. pleased; pleasant

解析: pleased (人感到满意), pleasant (事物令人愉悦)。

## 第七课: 代词

### · 人称代词

数 人称 格	单数			复数		
	第一人称	第二人称	第三人称	第一人称	第二人称	第三人称
主格	I	you	he/she/it	we	you	they
宾格	me	you	him/her/it	us	you	them

### 1. 第一人称 I 和 we

第一人称 I 是唯一永远都需要大写的代词, 但是宾格 me 不需要, 复数形式分别为 we 和 us

I need some water. 我想喝点水。

Do you like me? 你喜欢我吗?

We want to go hiking. 我们想去爬山。

They treat us kindly. 他对我们很好。

注: let's 和 let us 的区别:

Let's 咱们....吧。 (包括对方)

Let us ① (让) 我们...吧 (包括对方) =let's

② 请允许我们...吧 (不包括对方)

### 2. 第二人称 you

you 可以作单数, 指听者, 也可以用作复数, 指听者和其他在场或不在场的人。

Do you speak English in Canada?

You're another! 你不也一样!

### 3. 第三人称 he/she/it/they

he 和 she 是单数第三人称代词有“性别”的变化, 但 he/she 除了指代男人和女人外, 也可以指代动物或无生命物

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

Be careful of that dog. He sometimes bites. 担心那条狗，它有时候咬人!

注: he 有时候表示泛指，出现在谚语中，相当于 anyone

He that travels far knows much. 远行见识广。

He who hesitates is lost. 当断不断，必受其乱。

有时，不能确定性别时候，常用 he or she，表示尊重女权

Everyone should contribute what he or she can afford. 人人都应该尽自己的能力做贡献。

It 的基本用法

#### 1) 指代某样东西

例:

She sent me a message on the phone, but I couldn't understand it.

她给我发了一条手机短信，但我不懂什么意思。

注: it 和 one 的区别

It: 指代同类同物

One: 指代同类不同物

不知道人的性别，也可以用 it 指代

例:

Her new baby is tiny. It only weighs 2 kilos. 她刚出生的宝宝才 4 斤。

例:

--Who is it? 谁啊特么的

--It's me. 是我

#### 2) 指代抽象事物

例:

He likes KUN, but he does not admit it. 他喜欢鸽鸽，但是他不承认。

例:

How is it going with you? 你最近可好?

#### 3) 指代时间，日期，天气，环境等

例:

What time is it? 几点了?

It's the second of May. 今天是五月 2 号。

it is rainy today. 今天下雨了。

It is very cold here. 这里很冷。

#### 4) 指代距离

How far is it to Tokyo? 这里离东京多远?

they 的基本用法

1) they 可以指代第三人称复数的人，动物或者事物等各种。

例:

They need more money than before. 他们比之前更需要钱。

2) they 可以指代负责某种职务或者特定的人，翻译为“当局”。

例:

They have declared their country a “nuclear-free” zone. 当局称他们国家为无核区。

#### 4. 几个人称代词并列时的顺序

1) 遵循“二一，三一，二三，二三一”原则

例: you and I, you and us

Tom and I, you and they

You, Tom and I

注: 在有“不好的”事情，例如承担责任，承认错误等，第一人称放前面

I and the girl are to blame.

2) 第一人称+不定代词

例: we and six other girls

#### • 物主代词

物主代词是表示所有关系的代词，是人称代词的属格形式，表示“所有”。和人称代词一样，也分第一人称，第二人称和第三人称，每个人称有单复数，物主代词有形容词性和名词性两种。

类型/词义	我的	你的	他的	她的	它的	我们的	你们的	他/她/它们的
形容词性	my	your	his	her	its	our	your	their
名词性	mine	yours	his	hers	/	ours	yours	theirs

1. 形容词性物主代词，功能上和形容词一致，可以当定语

例:

*My* honor is *my* life. 我的荣誉就是我的生命。

与 own 连用时，可以作为表语

例:

Every bird loves *its own* nest. 人爱其家。

2. 名词性物主代词与名词功能类似，可以作为表语，主语

例:

The book is *mine*. 这本书是我的。

*Ours* is a socialist country. 我们的国家是社会主义国家。

可以与 of 连用

例:

I borrowed a bike of *his*. 我借了他的自行车。

## · 反身代词

表示“（我们/你们/他们）自己”的代词，形式如下:

人称/数	第一人称	第二人称	第三人称
单数	myself	yourself	himself/herself/itself
复数	ourselves	yourselves	themselves

1. 当句子中的主语和宾语为同一个人或者物的时候，宾语用反身代词

例:

Let me introduce *myself*. 让我介绍一下自己。

He quickly accustomed *himself* to the new way of life. 他很快习惯了这种新的生活方式。

2. 部分介词+反身代词，含义略有差距

1) By oneself (没有人帮助) 独立地

例:

John managed to repair his car *by himself*. 约翰能设法独立修理自己的车。

The door opened *by itself*. 门自动开了。

2) For oneself 为自己 (供自己使用)

例:

She first made a name *for herself* as an actress. 她最初是当演员而出名的。

We'd like to see it *for ourselves*. 我们想亲眼看看。

3) In oneself 就其本身而言，基本上 (不考虑其他部分)

例:

Exam is not so important *in itself*. 考试本身并不重要。

They were good man *in themselves*, but they had to make a living. 他们本身都是好人，但他们也得谋生。

4) To oneself 独自享用或占用

例:

I want a little time *to myself*. 我要点自己的时间。

How I wish to have a room *to myself*! 我真想要一个自己的房间啊!

## · 指示代词和指示形容词

指示代词	单数	复数
近指	this	these
远指	that	those

1. **this** 和 **these** 用于近指，即指代或修饰在空间或时间上距离较近，或者说话者认为比较近的人和事物

例：

**This** is my pencil. 这是我的铅笔。

**These** are our children, Xiao Ming and Xiao Hui. 这些是我们的孩子，小铭和小慧。

2. **that** 和 **those** 的特别用法

1) **that/those** 可以替代句子中前面出现过的名词或名词短语，避免重复

例：

The human brain is more advance than **that** of dog.

人脑比狗脑发达

2) **Like that** 这样

例：

I'm not having you make remarks **like that** about my girlfriend.

我不许你这样说我女朋友。

3) **that is (to say)** 换而言之

例：

He doesn't want to eat anything, **that is (to say)**, he is not hungry.

他不想吃任何东西，换句话说，他不饿。

4) **that's all** 仅此而已

例：

Just don't do it again, **that's all**. 以后别这样做了，就这样。

5) **that's it** 说对了

例：

That's it. You have described what I felt. 就是这样，你说出来我的感受。

6) **that's that** 情况就是这样

例：

So that's that. At last we all agreed. 就这样，我们取得了一致意见。

7) **what's that** ?你说什么?

例：

What's that? You forget the password? 你说什么? 你把密码忘记了?

## • 不定代词

### **all**

1) **all** 作为名词性不定代词时，可以用作单数也可以用作复数，取决于 **all** 所指代的内容

例：

All had dark rings under their eyes. 所有人都有黑圆圈。

All is already. 一切就绪。

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

2) all 作为形容词性不定代词时，可以修饰可数名词复数和不可数名词

例：

All my students can pass the exam. 我所有的学生都可以通过考试。

All hope has gone. 一切希望都破灭了。

### each

1) each 有“形容词性”，可以修饰名词，有“每一个”的意思

例：

Each man has his limitation. 人皆有其短。

2) each 有“名词性”，可以作主语或者宾语

Each went his way. 各走各的路。

### every

every 只有形容词性，在句子作定语，可以指人或物，用于修饰单数可数名词，修饰对象为三个及以上。

例：

Every person needs water and a diet of healthy foods. 人人都需要水和健康饮食。

I go to school every day. 我每天上学。

注：each、every 和 all 的用法比较

代词/区别	意义	作用	用法	与 of 搭配
each	每个(强调个体)	主语、宾语、定语、同位语	两者或者两者以上	可以
every	每个(强调整体)	定语	三者或者三者以上	不可以
all	全部(整体描述)	主语、宾语、定语、同位语	三者或者三者以上	可以

注：every one 和 everyone 的区别

every one 指的是人或者物的数量表达，everyone 指每一个人

例：

I bought a dozen eggs and every one of them was bad. 我买了一打鸡蛋，每一个都是坏的。

Everyone except me got an invitation. 除了我以外，每个人都收到了邀请函。

### both, either 和 neither

这三个词都只用在两个人或物的情况下，都不能与不可数名词连用，都可以用作名词性代词，也可以用作形容词性代词。both 表示“两者都”，either 表示“两者中任何一个”，neither 表示“两者都不”。

例：

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

Both of my parents love me very much. 我的爸爸妈妈都很爱我。

I don't know either of his teacher=I know neither of his teacher.

他的两位老师我都不认识。

You can take either cake, but you can not take both. 你可以任选一块蛋糕拿走，但不能都 拿走。

### some, any 及其不定式

1.some 和 any 都表示“一些”，可以指人或者其他可数的东西，也可以代表不可数的东西，可以作为主语、宾语等。一般 some 用于肯定句，any 用于否定句。

例:

I have some apples. 我有些苹果。

I don't think there's any left. 我想已经没什么剩的了。

2.some 有时用在疑问句或者反问句中，表示说话者希望得到对方肯定的回答

例:

Can I take some of this paper? 我能拿点这些纸么?

any 有时也用于肯定句，表示“任何一个，任何一些”

例:

You may take any. 你可以拿走一些

3.some 和 any 的特殊用法

1) some+单数可数名词=“某个”

例:

You will be sorry for this some day. 总有一天，你会为此后悔的。

2) any 作定语可以表示“任何一个”

例:

Any type will do. 什么样的都行。

### no, none 和 no one

1. no 相当于“没有”，等于 not any，可以修饰可数名词和不可数名词。

例:

No man is born wise or learned. 人非生而知之者。

no+Ving 表示“不允许，禁止”

例:

No smoking! 禁止吸烟。

No scribbling on the wall! 请勿在墙上乱涂!

2. none 和 no one 的区别:

代词/区别	指代	是否可数	回答 how much/many	回答 who	跟 of 结构
no one	人	可数	达咩	中	达咩
none	人或者物	可数与不可数	中	达咩	中

例:

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

No one in our class failed the math exam. 我们班没有人在数学考试中不及格。

None of them believe his story. 他们都不相信他的故事。

How many of you have been to shanghai?

--

Who knows the answer to this question?

--

### other 类

形容词性	名词性	意义
other(+n)	others	泛指“另外一些”
another(+n)	another	泛指“另外一个”
the other(+n)	the other	特指另外“一个”
the other(+ns)	The others	特指另外“一些”

### many, much, few, little

代词/区别	意义	作用	用法	与 of 搭配
much/many	很多	主语、宾语、定语	many 修饰可数名词复数, much 修饰不可数名词	可以加 of, 此时 many/much 相当于名词
little	几乎没有	主语、宾语、定语、状语、表语	修饰不可数名词	of 后为不可数名词或代词
a little	有一点			
few	几乎没有	主语、宾语、定语、表语	修饰可数名词	of 后为可数名词或代词
a few	有几个			

## 作业与练习

### 基础训练

1.—Is the woman a teacher?

—Yes. She teaches \_\_\_\_\_ English.

A. you      B. us      C. our      D. your

2.— We don't know \_\_\_\_\_ he is.

— He is a doctor.

A. what      B. which      C. who      D. whom

3.— How was your visit to the World Park in Beijing?

— Wonderful! We enjoyed \_\_\_\_\_ very much.

A. itself      B. myself      C. yourselves      D. ourselves

4. Whatever you do, \_\_\_\_ is difficult if you put your heart into it.  
A. nothing      B. anything      C. something      D. everything
5. —Excuse me, is this \_\_\_\_\_ new camera?  
—Yes, it's \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. your; my      B. your; mine      C. yours; my      D. yours; mine
6. An old friend of my sister's always helps my brother and \_\_\_\_ with \_\_\_\_ English.  
A. I; our      B. me; ourselves      C. I; my      D. me; our
7. —When shall we go to the museum, this afternoon or tomorrow morning?  
—\_\_\_\_\_ is OK. I'm free these days.  
A. Both      B. All      C. Either      D. Neither
8. —Wow! You've got so many skirts.  
—But \_\_\_\_\_ of them is in fashion now.  
A. all      B. both      C. neither      D. none
9. Please give \_\_\_\_\_ English book to her.  
A. me      B. I      C. mine      D. my
10. — Where is my notebook?  
— I don't know. It isn't here. Maybe \_\_\_\_\_ took it away by mistake.  
A. everybody      B. nobody      C. anybody      D. somebody
11. \_\_\_\_\_ are all college students, so we can help the old man solve the problem.  
A. You, he and I      B. He, you and I      C. You, I and he      D. I, he and you
12. Look at those red bags. \_\_\_\_\_ are all for \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. They; they      B. We; you      C. They; us      D. We; them
13. Can you take these apples to \_\_\_\_\_? \_\_\_\_\_ are all in the box, too.  
A. your; Yours      B. him; Him      C. yours; Her      D. her; Yours
14. — Could I talk to you for \_\_\_\_\_ minutes, Mike?  
— Sorry, I have \_\_\_\_\_ time.  
A. a few; little      B. little; few      C. few; little      D. a little; a few
15. — Who is singing in the classroom?  
— \_\_\_\_\_ must be my sister. She likes singing.  
A. It      B. She      C. This      D. He

1. New English-Chinese Dictionary has been republished several times, \_\_\_\_\_ more up to date than the last edition.

- A. any            B. everyone        C. either            D. each

2. After paying 1,000 dollars \_\_\_\_\_, you'll all become full members of our club.

- A. each            B. all                C. every            D. both

3. \_\_\_\_\_ was her cruelty that we all hated her.

- A. It                B. What             C. That             D. Such

4. Mary has been ill in bed for a week. I wonder if she is \_\_\_\_\_ better now.

- A. much            B. some             C. any               D. very

5. -Which of these two ties will you take?                -I don't like these. Do you have any \_\_\_\_\_ ?

- A. one              B. other             C. ones              D. others

6. I'd rather ride a bike as bike riding has \_\_\_\_\_ of the trouble of taking buses.

- A. much            B. all                C. neither           D. none

7. I need some blue ink today but there is \_\_\_\_\_ at hand.

- A. not              B. nothing          C. a little           D. none

8. I found the very watch of mine \_\_\_\_\_ I had left \_\_\_\_\_ .

- A. where, it        B. that, it           C. which,    one     D. where,    one

9. I haven't got time to get the tickets. Who's going to \_\_\_\_\_ ?

- A. do so            B. do it              C. buy it             D. do them

10. -Jack certainly has a high opinion of Susan.

It can't be better than \_\_\_\_\_ of him.

- A. hers             B. she                C. that               D. her

11. -Shall we introduce \_\_\_\_\_ fire-fighting equipment from abroad?

-Go ahead, if necessary.

- A. other            B. a few more      C. another           D. some other

12. -How about the price of these refrigerators?

-They are equal in price to, if not cheaper than, \_\_\_\_\_ at the other stores.

- A. others      B. it      C. that      D. the ones

13. -I dislike \_\_\_\_\_ when others laugh at me in public or speak ill of me behind.

-So do I.

- A. them      B. those      C. it      D. that

14. -Which do you prefer, classical music or pop music?

-\_\_\_\_\_. I prefer folk music.

- A. Either      B. Both      C. None      D. Neither

15. Why don't you trust and use old Tom? He is still as strong as \_\_\_\_\_ in the team.

- A. nobody      B. anybody else      C. everybody      D. somebody else

16. -Are the new methods taking any effect?

-Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ articles are stolen from our supermarket.

- A. few      B. more      C. some      D. none

17. During the meeting a young man cried out suddenly and threw his notebook at the chairman, \_\_\_\_\_ brought the room to disorder.

- A. it      B. and which      C. and that      D. this

18. I've just seen no more than one copy of *Gone with the Wind* in the bookshop opposite. Tom, go and buy \_\_\_\_\_ back.

- A. one      B. any      C. it      D. some

19. -Do you have \_\_\_\_\_ at home now?

-No, we still have to get scores of eggs and some vegetables.

- A. nothing      B. everything      C. anything      D. something

20. Nancy is expecting another baby and hopes \_\_\_\_\_ will be a boy.

- A. he      B. that      C. it      D. there

21. Surely it's \_\_\_\_\_ with the big nose you mean, not \_\_\_\_\_!

- A. he, I      B. him, me      C. him, I      D. he, me

22. The temperature can fall to  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$ . \_\_\_\_\_ is,  $30^{\circ}\text{C}$  below freezing point.

- A. Which      B. It      C. That      D. This

23. -The exam was easy, wasn't it?  
-Yes, but I don't think \_\_\_\_\_ could pass it.  
A. somebody    B. everybody    C. anybody    D. nobody
24. Cut the apple into halves so that the twins may each get \_\_\_\_\_ half.  
A. every    B. each    C. another    D. either
25. \_\_\_\_\_ of us can do everything, but all of us can do \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. None, something    B. Some, everything    C. Few, something    D. Few, nothing
26. -May I help you with some gloves, sir?  
-Yes, I'd like to try those blue \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. one    B. ones    C. pair    D. two
27. Of all my friends \_\_\_\_\_ will be able to persuade Tom to change his mind. He is so firm upon it.  
A. none    B. nobody    C. neither    D. no one
28. -Is he content to accept our offered price?  
-Yes. He cares more about the quality. Money is \_\_\_\_\_ to him.  
A. everything    B. anything    C. nothing    D. something
29. I have no idea which was better, so I took \_\_\_\_\_ of them.  
A. both    B. none    C. all    D. any
30. You mustn't always do \_\_\_\_\_ as he asks you to do. He may be wrong sometimes.  
A. anything    B. something    C. nothing    D. everything

### 答案与解析

#### 基础练习

1. B。本题是考查人称代词的用法，本句是双宾语句式，us 作间接宾语，English 作直接宾语。人称代词的宾格是作宾语的。
2. A。本题是考查疑问代词，这里的 what he is 作主句 I don't know 的宾语，用来表达问职业的句式。
3. D。本题考查反身代词的固定搭配，enjoy oneself 意为“玩得开心”。
4. A。本题是考查不定代词的用法。句意为：只要你用心，没有什么是困难的。

5. B. 本题考查形容词性物主代词和名词性物主代词的用法，形容词性物主代词后接名词，名词性物主代词可单独使用。
6. D. 本题 **me** 作 **help** 的宾语，**our** 作 **English** 的定语。
7. C. 本题是考查不定代词的区别，**both** 指“两者都”，**all** 指“全部”，**either** 指“两者中的任何一个”，**neither** 指“两者都不”。
8. D. 本题是考查不定代词的区别，**all** 指“全部”，**both** 指“两者都”，**neither** 指“两者都不”，**none** 指“三者以上不”，由句意可知“尽管裙子多，但是都不时尚了”。
9. D. 考查代词的用法。根据句意“请把我的英语书给她”可知此处修饰 **English book** 应该使用形容词性的物主代词，故选 D。
10. D. **somebody** 意为“某人”，句意为“可能有人拿错了”。
11. A. 本题是考查多个人称代词并列的时候排列顺序。单数排列顺序是第二人称代词在前面，第三人称在中间，第一人称在后面。
12. C. 本题的考查代词的用法。第一个空用 **they** 的主格形式作主语，代替上文的 **those red bags**；第二个空在介词 **for** 的后面用宾格形式作宾语。所以选择 C。
13. D. 第一个空在介词 **to** 的后面用代词的宾格，第二个空用名词性物主代词作主语。所以选择 D。
14. A. 本题题意：“我能和你谈几分钟吗，麦克？”“对不起，我没有时间。”**a few** 修饰可数名词复数，表示肯定；**little** 修饰不可数名词，也表示否定。
15. A. 本题是考查代词的用法，在表示猜测的时候用代词 **it** 代替所问的人。

### 提升训练

1. D. **each**  
解析：句意为“新版英汉词典已多次再版，每一版都比前一版更新。”**each** 强调“每一个”，符合语境。
2. A. **each**  
解析：句意为“每人支付 1000 美元后，你们都将成为俱乐部的正式会员。”**each** 表示“每个人”，强调个体。
3. D. **Such**  
解析：句意为“她的残忍让我们都讨厌她。”**such** 用于强调“如此……”，结构为“**Such + be + 名词 + that...**”。
4. C. **any**  
解析：句意为“玛丽已卧病一周，我想知道她现在是否好些了。”**any** 用于疑问句或否定句，表示“稍微”。
5. D. **others**  
解析：句意为“——这两条领带你选哪一条？——我都不喜欢，还有其他款式吗？”**others** 泛指“其他的”。
6. D. **none**  
解析：句意为“我宁愿骑自行车，因为骑车没有乘公交的麻烦。”**none of** 表示“完全没有”。
7. D. **none**  
解析：句意为“今天我需要一些蓝墨水，但手头一点也没有。”**none** 表示“全无”。
8. A. **where, it**  
解析：句意为“我在我放它的地方找到了我的手表。”**where** 引导地点状语从句，**it** 指代前文的 **watch**。

9. B. do it

解析：句意为“我没时间买票，谁来做这件事？”do it 指代前文的“get the tickets”。

10. C. that

解析：句意为“——杰克对苏珊评价很高。——不可能比他对他的评价更高。”that 指代“opinion”。

11. D. some other

解析：句意为“——我们要引进其他消防设备吗？——有必要的就引进。”some other 表示“其他一些”。

12. D. the ones

解析：句意为“——这些冰箱的价格如何？——它们即使不比别的店便宜，价格也相同。”the ones 指代“refrigerators”。

13. C. it

解析：句意为“——我讨厌别人当众嘲笑我或背后说我坏话。——我也是。”it 指代“when...”整个情况。

14. D. Neither

解析：句意为“——你喜欢古典音乐还是流行音乐？——都不喜欢，我喜欢民乐。”neither 表示“两者都不”。

15. B. anybody else

解析：句意为“为何不信任老汤姆？他仍和队里其他人一样强壮。”anybody else 表示“其他任何人”。

16. A. few

解析：句意为“——新方法有效吗？——是的，超市里几乎没东西被偷了。”few 表示“几乎没有”。

17. C. and that

解析：句意为“会议中一名年轻人突然大喊并向主席扔笔记本，这使会场陷入混乱。”and that 指代前文整个事件。

18. C. it

解析：句意为“我刚看到对面书店只剩一本《飘》，汤姆，去买回来。”it 特指前文的“copy”。

19. B. everything

解析：句意为“——家里东西都备齐了吗？——没有，我们还得买些鸡蛋和蔬菜。”everything 表示“所有东西”。

20. C. it

解析：句意为“南希期待再有一个孩子，并希望是个男孩。”it 指代未知性别的婴儿。

21. B. him, me

解析：句意为“你指的肯定是大鼻子的他，不是我！”him 和 me 作宾语，符合介词 with 的用法。

22. C. That

解析：句意为“温度可降至  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$ ，即冰点以下  $30^{\circ}\text{C}$ 。”that is 是固定表达，意为“即”。

23. B. everybody

解析：句意为“——考试很简单吧？——是的，但我觉得不是所有人都能通过。”not everybody 表示部分否定。

24. B. each

解析：句意为“把苹果切成两半，让双胞胎各得一半。”each 强调“各自”。

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

25. A. None, something

解析：句意为“我们没人能做所有事，但都能做一些事。”none 表示“没有人”，something 表示“某些事”。

26. B. ones

解析：句意为“——先生，要试手套吗？——是的，我想试试那双蓝色的。”ones 指代复数 gloves。

27. A. none

解析：句意为“我所有朋友中没人能说服汤姆改变主意，他太坚决了。”none of 表示“全无”。

28. C. nothing

解析：句意为“——他满意我们的报价吗？——是的，他更在乎质量，钱对他不重要。”money is nothing 表示“钱无所谓”。

29. A. both

解析：句意为“我不知道哪个更好，所以两个都拿了。”both 指“两者都”。

30. D. everything

解析：句意为“别总是按他说的做，他有时会错。”not...everything 表示“并非所有事”。

## 第八课：介词的底层逻辑

所有的英语介词都是为了表达两个实体之间的空间关系，因此我们必须对空间思维有个概念，因此我们引入点、线/面、空间立体区域的概念。

### 1. 空间的维度对应介词

一维：点 (at)

二维：线/面 (on)

三维：空间区域 (in)

维度	介词	空间名词	例
点	at	门牌号	at 27 King's Road
		店铺场所	at the store
			at the theater
		其他具体位置	at the corner of the street
at the back of the room			
at the end of the street			
线/面	on	街道	on Victoria Street
		道路	on King's Road
		楼层	on the third floor

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

空间区域	in	国家	in China
		城市	in Beijing
		城市区域	in Chinatown
		城镇	in town
		室外空间	in the garden
			in Times Square
室内空间	in the room		

## 2. 从空间角度转换视角

### (1) 看待不同事物

on 所表达的是二维的“平面”，但并不是非要“水平面”，有时需要转化视角，例如：

There is a spider on the ceiling. 有一只蜘蛛在天花板上。

There is a map on the wall. 墙上贴着一幅地图。

如果转换视角，则蜘蛛在天花板“上面”，同样，地图也在墙“上面”，都是在非水平的二维平面“上面”。

### (2) 看待同一事物

看待同一事物随着视角的转换，空间位置也会发生改变，例如：

I will meet you **at** the shop. 咱在那个店门口见。

I work **in** the shop. 我在那个店工作。

我们说 **at the shop** 时候，是把店铺看成一个整体，相当于一个点，于是用介词 **at**，意思是在店铺附近、周边。如果要强调在店里面，则需要用介词 **in**。**at** 表示行为发生的场所，更强调**行为活动**，而 **in** 则强调地点本身。

传统：一般而言，大地点用介词 **in**；小地点用介词 **at**，例如：

He arrive **at** the station late. 他到车站已经晚了。

He arrived **in** Beijing on Monday. 他周一到北京了。

视角转化：我们不能单纯地看某个空间地点的绝对大小，如果**语境合适**，我们可以用 **at Beijing**，例如：

You have to change planes **at** Beijing. 你得在北京转机。

因为当我们把城市作为行程中的站点时，可以把这些城市名称抽象成“点”，此时可以用 **at**，再比如，火车途中经过的车站时，我们可以是：

Does this train stop **at** Hangzhou? 这列车经停杭州么？

对于交通工具而言，一般而言，如果人们在其中可以站立，比如 **bus** 和 **train** 等，一般用 **on**；如果不能站立，则用介词 **in**，比如 **car** 和 **taxi**。

视角转化（以 bus 为例）：

如果单纯强调在公交车里面而不是外面，则会说 in the bus，例如：

Get on the bus! In the bus, we have water, food and a movie to watch.

### 3. 时间关系看待 at, on, in

空间关系一般比较具体，我们容易感知和辨认。因此借用空间关系类比推理时间关系，但时间是二维的线性的，没有三维概念，因此我们分为：点时间（一维）和段时间（二维）的概念。

具体的点时间，我们用介词 at，例如：

I was born **at** 8 p.m. 我是晚上八点钟出生的。

由于时间没有三维性，所以**相对短的时间**我们用 on，比如某天，类似于空间上的一个“线或面”，而较长的时间用介词 in，例如谈论某一年，类似空间上的大区域。

例如：

I was born on March 16. 我是出生日期是 3 月 16。

I was born in 1995. 我是 1995 年出生的。

简单罗列这三个介词对应的时间名词：

点时间/段时间	介词	时间名词	例
时刻	at	具体钟点	at 8 p.m.
		一天中某个时刻	at dawn
			at daybreak
			at lunch at dinner
			at night at midnight
		节日期间	at Christmas
年龄	at 20		
小时段	on	星期	on Monday
		日期	on March 6
		某天的早中晚	on Monday morning on a cold night on a sunny morning
		节日当天	on Christmas Day
大时段	in	世纪	in the 1900s
		年代	in the 1990s
		年	in 1990
		四季	in(the)spring
		月	in March
		周	in two weeks
		早中晚	in the morning

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

			in the afternoon in the evening in the daytime
--	--	--	--

思考：为什么是 at night 而不是 in the night?

一般而言，在英语中一天分为四个时段：

morning: 6-12 点

afternoon: 12-18 点

evening: 18-21 或 22 点

night: 剩余的时间

从人们正常的生活作息规律，再前三个时间段，人们一般都从事活动，而在第四个时间段 night 人们一般处于睡眠的状态。在从事活动期间，人们自然是有意识的，意识到时间的流逝，为了强调这样的一段时间区域，英文用介词 in。在睡眠中，人们是无意识的。“眼一闭一睁，天就亮了”。这意味这 night 给人的感觉是一个“时间点”，这和其他具体时间点用 at 道理是一样的。

那么可以用 in the night 么？

答案是可以的，试着对比以下两个句子：

I will meet you at night.

I will meet you in the night.

第一句是一个常规的表达，表示：我晚上想见你，没有其他隐含意义；

第二句由于 in the night 不是一个常规的表达，带来了言外之意。说话人不是要强调“晚上”这个时间，而是“趁着夜色”去做一件秘密的事情，因此更像是“秘密见面，不想被发现”。

因此，at night 表示惯例，习惯性一般性活动，而 in the night 表示单一的，特殊的活动例如：

Someone stole my car \_\_in\_\_ the night.

Police report that car thefts are on the rise, particularly \_\_at\_\_ night

#### 4. 隐喻关系

我们借用表达空间关系的介词来理解和描述其他各种抽象关系。这就是介词的隐喻用法。

##### at 表达隐喻：

我们通常用 at 来谈论空间上和时间上的“点”，而我们所瞄准(target 或 aim)的目标或靶心也是一个“点”，因此可以用 at 这样说：

a. The missiles were mainly targeted at the United States. (这些导弹主要瞄准的是美国。)

即采用 at 的隐喻用法，把整个美国当成一个目标点。不过，如果说 a 句中的 at 或多或少还与空间有联系，那么下面 b 句中的 at 表达的就不是空间关系了：

b. The course is aimed at those aged 12 or over.(这门课程针对的是 12 岁或 12 岁以上的人群。)

通过隐喻，我们也可以使用 **at** 来谈论自己（不）擅长的“点”。比如：

- c. I've always been good **at** English.(我的英语一直很好。)
- d. He is bad **at** cake-making.(他不擅长做蛋糕。)
- e. He is an expert **at** cake-making.(他擅长做蛋糕。)
- f. John excels **at** sport.(约翰擅长运动。)

### **on** 表达隐喻：

既然 **on** 常用来表达“线或面”的关系，那在 **list**“名单”或 **agenda**“议事日程”前面用 **on** 就不难理解了，因为一长串的名单或议程安排都具有线性的特点。比如说：

- a. He's not **on** the list of suspects.(他不在犯罪嫌疑人名单上。)
- b. The government put education high **on** the agenda.(政府高度重视教育。)

当然，若说到名单或议程中的某个具体位置，就会用 **at**(类似线条中的某一点)，如 **at the top of the agenda**：

- c. For the government, education is now **at the top of the agenda**.(对政府来说，教育现在是当务之急。)

前面我们说道：

- a. The book is **on** the table.

一方面，**table** 对 **book** 有**支撑**作用，受这个概念影响，我们可以说：

- b. You can rely **on** me.

这是因为 **me** 对 **you** 有**支撑、支持**作用。

另一方面，**book** 对 **table** 也有**反作用并产生影响**，

因此，当我们要表达 **A** 对 **B** 有影响时，往往用介词 **on** 说成 **A has an influence/impact on B**。请看例句：

- c. Television has a great influence **on** children.(电视对儿童有很大的影响。)

“**A** 对 **B** 的影响”也可以说成 **the influence of A on B**：

- d. What exactly is the influence of television **on** children?(电视对儿童究竟有什么影响?)

### **in** 表达隐喻：

**in** 的隐喻用法非常多见，我们可以用 **in** 来表达在具体的空间区域或介质中，如：

- a. He's **in** the room.
- b. He's **in** the water.

还可以用 **in** 来表达各种**情感、情绪、状况**等，因此英语中有以下关于 **in** 的搭配：

- b. He's **in** love.(他恋爱了。)

按照英文思维，**love** 像是一个容器或介质，让人身处其中，这就类似人可以处在 **water** 里一样。其实，中文也有类似的隐喻表达，比如“沉浸在爱河中”“永浴爱河”等。

- d. He is **in** a bad mood 他心情不好
- e. He is **in** danger. 他很危险。

### 动态描述去向：

动态描述目标去向的介词有 **to**、**onto** 和 **into**，分别对应静态的介词 **at**、**on** 和 **in**。这背后的逻辑是：动态 **to** 是表达“方向”的介词代表，与静态“平面”介词 **on** 复合构成 **onto**，来表达动态含义“到…上面”。同理，动态 **to** 与静态“空间区域”介词 **in** 复合构成 **into**，来表达动态含义“进入…里面”。

### **to** 表达空间、时间和隐喻

例：

He goes to school at 7 o'clock every day.(他每天 7 点去学校。)

这里是把 school 当成一个空间上的点。也可以用 **to** 来谈论时间上的点，比如：

It's five to nine.(现在是 9 点差 5 分。) 也就是 8 点 55 分，再过 5 分钟就到 9 点了。

c. John has always been kind to animals.(约翰一直很爱护动物。)

这里的 **to** 表示人的情感态度作用的方向——爱护动物，这是 **to** 的隐喻用法。

### **onto** 表达空间、时间和隐喻

**onto** 的基本空间含义是“移动到某物的表面上(moving to a position on a surface)”。

例：

The cat climbed onto the wall.(猫爬上了墙。)

显然 wall 表达的是一个空间上的平面。

Twelve thousand workers will go onto a four-day week at their factory in Birmingham.(伯明翰工厂的 12,000 名工人将采取每周 4 天工作制。)这里的 **onto** 谈论的是时间，表示工作时间安排上的转变。另外，我们可以用 **onto** 来表示谈论话题的转变

Yeah, I'm coming onto that.(好的，我正要谈到那点。)

这就属于 **onto** 的隐喻用法。

### **into** 表达空间、时间和隐喻

由静态的介词 **in**“里面”结合动态的 **to**“去向”构成了 **into**，因此 **into** 表示“进入…里面”。请看例句：

He dived into the water.(他潜入了水中。)

请比较：

He is in the water.(他在水里。)

显然 a 句中的 **into** 动态描述了 he 的空间位置的变换，而 **in** 只是静态描述了 he 的位置。

我们用 **into** 谈论时间时，一般是表示某个活动持续进行到某个时间，

比如：

the party started late and lasted into Sunday morning.(派对开始得很晚，一直持续到周日凌晨。)

要表示某个活动“一直持续到深夜”可以说成：

The talk continued well into the night.(会谈一直持续到深夜。)

**into** 的隐喻用法非常多见，比如：

The company ran into trouble.(该公司陷入了困境。)

### **from** 表达空间、时间和隐喻 (点)

例：

He was home from school.(他放学回家了。)

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

I will be in Beijing from March to late May.(从3月到5月底我将都在北京。)

We got a lot of pleasure from your visit.(你的到来给我们带来了快乐。)

以上个例句中的 from 分别表示空间、时间及隐喻含义。

### off 表达空间、时间和隐喻 (线/面)

例:

He lives off King's Road.(他住在国王路附近。)

请比较:

He lives on King's Road.(他住在国王路上。)

一般来说, on 表示在线/面上, 而 off 表示从线/面上离开。可见, on 和 off 在一定意义上是一对反义词 (比如 turn on“开启”和 turn off“关闭”)。

再比如, “在海边”可以说 on the coast 和 off the coast,前者表示在海岸边陆地一侧, 而后者表示在海岸边海水一侧, 是离开了陆地的。因此造句时不能用错了介词, 比如:

The boat was anchored off the coast.(船停泊在海边。)

The hotel is on the coast.(这家酒店在海边。)

中文都是“在海边”, 分不出是在陆地上还是在海水里 (当然, 借助生活常识, 我们会推测出是在水里还是在陆地上), 但在英文中通过介词 on 和 off 即可辨之。如果改用 off 说成“The hotel is off the coast.”,那么我们就知道, 这家酒店是建在水里的。

简单来说, on 和 off 都可以表示“在…边上”“在…附近”, 区别是 on 表示属于某地的一部分, 而 off 表示不属于某地的一部分, 脱离了某地。因此, on 后面接 street、avenue、coast、beach、river 等名词, 表示“在…边上”, 是临街而建, 临水而建; 而 off 则表示离开这些地方的附近别处 (如别的街道或水里)。

下面我们来看 off 表达时间关系。请看例句:

He could not get time off work to go on holiday.(他工作很忙, 抽不出时间去度假。)

表示时间的 off 也可以作为副词, 结构是“时间段+off”, 表达现在到将来的一段时间上的距离。

比如说:

With the exams now only a week off, I have to study hard.(现在离考试只有一个星期了, 我得努力学习。)

off 用于隐喻的含义也非常多见, 比如:

Keep off the subject of politics.(勿谈政治。)

### out of 表达空间、时间和隐喻 (区域)

请看例句:

She stepped out of the train onto the platform.(她走下火车, 来到了月台上。)

介词 out of 表达时间的用法不常见。可见于短语 run out of time“耗尽时间”中, 比如说:

He ran out of time before he could finish the test.(他还没来得及做完试卷时间就没了。)

该介词隐喻的用法很多, 比如:

The company got out of trouble.(该公司脱离了困境。)

动态描述物体在空间上运动路径的介词可以是 **past**、**along**、**through** 等。同样，这些词也可以用于时间含义或其他隐喻含义。列表如下：

### **past** 表达空间、时间和隐喻

**past** 可以表示通过空间上的某一点或某一处。请看例句：

He hurried past us without stopping.(他从我们身边急匆匆走过，没有停。)

也可以把 **past** 用作副词：

He waved to us as he walked past.(他路过时，朝我们招了招手。)

介词 **past** 表达时间应该是大家都熟悉的，比如 **half past two**“两点半”。请看例句：

It was past midnight when we got home.(我们到家时已经过了半夜。)

请比较：

It's five past two.(两点过五分。)

It's five to two.(两点差五分。)

**past** 用于隐喻，通常表示“已经过了某个点、阶段或状态，不再做某事了”，比如：

I'm past caring about my appearance.(我已经不再关注自己的外表了。)

The flowers are past their best.(这些花已经开过季了。)

It's past its peak.(它已经过了巅峰期。)

### **along** 表达空间、时间和隐喻

**along** 的基本含义是“沿着·”，比如：

We were driving along King's Road.(我们当时正沿着国王路开车。)

作介词时，**along** 主要是一个地点介词，很少表达时间。作副词时，**along** 可以表示时间，用于 **all along** 搭配中，相当于 **all the time**，意思是“一直，自始至终”。比如：

He has been fooling himself all along.(他一直在欺骗自己。)

介词 **along** 很少用于隐喻，但副词 **along** 可以。比如大家熟悉的 **get along(with sb.)**“相处融洽”：

We've always got along quite well.(我们一直相处得很融洽。)

我们可以这样来理解：**along** 表示两个人并行前进，他们既不彼此冲突、对抗，也不分道扬镳，而是志同道合、携手同行。这样就传达了一种相处愉悦、融洽的情感状态。

### **through** 表达空间、时间和隐喻

**through** 的典型空间含义是表示“在·中穿行或穿过”。比如“在森林中穿行(walk through the forest)”“在人群中穿行(make one's way through the crowd)”。穿行的物体与介质可以有接触，比如“鱼在水中穿行(fish move through the water)”，也可以没有接触，比如“鸟从窗户飞入室内(A bird flew in through the open window.)”。

我们也可以使用 **through** 表达时间，比如 **through the year**“全年”。

例句：

We lived there through one very cold winter..(我们在那里过了一个严寒的冬天。)

当然也可以把 through 用于隐喻：

They survived through many difficulties.(他们历经了很多困难。)

**其他介词补充：**

**near, by, beside** 表示“在附近”

near 表示相对的“近”，实际距离可能还很远。如：

The small child was afraid to go near the dog.

那小孩子不敢靠近那条狗。

by 和 beside 都表示“靠近”，实际距离可能不是很近，beside 比 by 更具体表示“在……旁边”。如：

She was standing beside her mother.

她正站在她母亲旁边。

Come here and get warm by the fire.

过来，烤火暖和一下。

**after, in**

二者均表示在某一段时间后，但该时段的起点不同。

(1) “in + 段时间”表示以此时此刻为起点的将来一个时段之后，常与将来时态的谓语动词连用。如：

My father will be back from abroad in three days.

三天后，我的父亲就会从国外回来。

I cannot see you now; come back in half an hour.

我现在不能见你，半小时后回来。

(2) “after + 一段时间”表示过去的一段时间之后。如：

He arrived after five months.

他五个月后回来了。

(3) “after + 具体时间”表示将来或过去的某一时刻之后。如：

She will appear after five o'clock this afternoon.

今天下午五点后她会 appear。

The rain began to fall after seven.

七点过后开始下雨了。

**工具，方式，手段介词**

1. by, in, on 三词都表示旅行的方式

(1)by 在不涉及交通工具的名词前时，其前不带冠词。如：by sea, by air, by water, by land, by rail 等。

(2)by 用在涉及交通工具的名词前时，此名词须用单数，其前面不加冠词或修饰语。如：by bike, by taxi, by plane, by ship/boat, by train, by spaceship 等。

(3)当旅行方式涉及特指的交通工具时，用 on 或 in，名词前用冠词、物主代词、指示代词等修饰语。如：travel to New York in this plane, leave on an early train, go to school on my bike 等。

注意

步行、骑马用 on。如：on foot, on horseback, on a horse 等。

2. with, by, in 三词均意为“用”，表示行为的工具、手段或方式

(1)with 用于有形的工具或身体某些器官之前，其后的名词多被冠词、物主代词等修饰。如：

They are digging with spades.

他们在用铁锹挖地。

We see with our eyes, hear with our ears, and walk with our legs.

我们用眼睛看东西，用耳朵听事，用腿走路。

(2)by, in, on, over, through 等多用于无形的工具或方式手段之前。如：by hand, in ink, on the telephone, over the radio, through the telescope 等。

You can order tickets by telephone.

你可以用电话订票。

注意

①使用语言、原料、材料时用 in 表示。如：in English/Japanese, in blue ink 等。

②表达“用……方法/式”时，所用介词分别为：in this/that/ the same way, by means of, by this/that means, with this/that method

### 示原因的介词（介词短语）

1. for 表示原因时，常与 sorry, famous, punish, praise, thank, blame 等词连用。如：

I am sorry for what I said to you.

我因为刚才对你所说的感到抱歉。

2. at 表示引起某种情感变化的原因，常与表示看、听或喜、怒、吃惊的词连用，意为“因听到或看到……而……”。如：

He was surprised at the news.

他对这个消息很吃惊。

3. from 常接抽象名词表示自然、间接或外在的原因，如受伤、车祸等。如：

He died from the wound.

他死于外伤。

4. of 多用于表示自身或内在的原因，如病、饿等。如：

The old man died of hunger.

这位老人是饿死的。

5. because of 表示引起结果的直接原因。如：

He retired last month because of his illness.

因为疾病他上个月退休了。

6. thanks to 表示引起某种幸运结果的原因，常意为“幸亏……，多亏……”。如：

Thanks to John, we won the game.

多亏了约翰，我们赢了比赛。

7. out of 表示动机的起因，常意为“出于……”。如：

He asked the question out of curiosity.

他出于好奇问了那个问题。

### 表示计量的介词

1. at 表示“以……速度”“以……价格”。

I sold my car at a low price.

我低价卖了我的车。

2. by 表示“按……计算”，后跟度量单位。加具体单位前用定冠词 the，加具体度量名词时该名词前不加冠词。

They are paid usually by the day/by time.

他们的报酬通常按日/时间结算。

3. for 表示“用……交换，以……为代价”。

He sold his car for 500 dollars.

他以五百美元把车卖了。

### 表示“除...之外”的介词

**besides** 表示包含，“除……之外还有……”，句中常有 other, others, also, else 等；

**except** 表示排除，“除……之外”，指整体里面排除部分，其宾语为整体概念词的同类语；后面可接反身代词、副词、介词短语或状语从句，也可接(省略 to 的)动词不定式、动名词、基数词，还可接 that 或 wh 从句；

**but** 表示排除，多与 nobody, none, no one, nothing, anything, everyone, all, who 等连用，其后可以接不定式；

**except for** 表示“只是，只不过”，常在说明基本情况后，往往与排除的部分不是同一类，从细节上加以修正。except for 的宾语在句中无同类语；

**apart from** 表示“此外，除……之外”，相当于 besides, as well as；表示“撇开……来说，除掉”，相当于 except for；

**in addition to** 表示“除……之外还有……”，相当于 besides。如：

Apart from going shopping, the old lady likes walking after dinner except when it rains.

除了购物，那位老妇人还喜欢晚饭后散步，除非下雨。

Beijing is a beautiful city, except for its traffic.

除了交通之外，北京是个美丽的城市。

## 作业与练习

### 基础训练

1. —What time do you usually go to bed?

—I usually go to bed \_\_\_\_\_ 11:00.

A. in      B. on      C. at      D. for

2. The weather is hot \_\_\_\_\_ summer in Beijing.

A. of      B. in      C. at      D. on

3. Li Ping was late \_\_\_\_\_ school yesterday.

A. for      B. to      C. with      D. of

4. Liu Ying runs fastest in our school. We are proud \_\_\_\_\_ her.  
A. at      B. for      C. of      D. to
5. Which sport do you like better, football \_\_\_\_\_ basketball?  
A. and      B. nor      C. or      D. but
6. We also have lessons \_\_\_\_\_ Saturday morning.  
A. in      B. at      C. during      D. on
7. All the students have finished the homework \_\_\_\_\_ Zhang Hua, so he's doing it now.  
A. and      B. besides      C. or      D. except
8. Grandpa Li can talk with people \_\_\_\_\_ different languages.  
A. by      B. from      C. in      D. with
9. They will have the final exam \_\_\_\_\_ three months.  
A. after      B. in      C. for      D. at
10. I was born \_\_\_\_\_ a cool autumn morning.  
A. in      B. at      C. to      D. on
11. While I was standing \_\_\_\_\_ the window, I saw several boys running \_\_\_\_\_ the street.  
A. at, along      B. on, at      C. in, on      D. to, in
12. Qian Xuesen is known as China's "father of space technology" and "king of rockets".  
He died \_\_\_\_\_ October 31 at the age of 98.  
A. in      B. on      C. at      D. of
13. The famous actor often plays \_\_\_\_\_ his dog in the park.  
A. about      B. in      C. at      D. with
14. — We'll have a hiking trip, but when shall we meet?  
— Let's make it \_\_\_\_\_ half past eight \_\_\_\_\_ the morning of June 21.  
A. at, in      B. /, on      C. /, in
15. — How can I go to the supermarket, Paul?  
— \_\_\_\_\_ bike. It's not far from here.  
A. On      B. By      C. In      D. With

### 提升训练

1. The teacher is writing \_\_\_\_\_ a piece of chalk on the blackboard while the students are writing \_\_\_\_\_ ink in exercise books.  
A. with, in      B. in, with      C. in, in      D. with, with
2. The worker can make chairs \_\_\_\_\_ wood, and also can make paper \_\_\_\_\_ wood.  
A. from, of      B. of, from      C. of, of      D. from, from

3. Mary dropped in \_\_\_\_ Mr Smith, but he wasn't at home, so she went to drop in \_\_\_\_ Mr Smith's office.    A. on, on    B. at, at    C. on. at    D. at. on
4. The teacher is not only strict \_\_\_\_ his pupils but also strict \_\_\_\_ his own work.  
A. with, with    B.in,in    C. in, with    D. with, in
5. His grandfather died \_\_\_\_ the wound that the enemy soldier had given him .and then his grand-mother died \_\_\_\_ hungry and cold.  
A.from,of    B.of,from    C.from,from    D.of.of
6. If you run \_\_\_\_ two hares you will catch neither.  
A.into    B.after    C.off    D. out of
7. This is a common mistake \_\_\_\_ students.  
A. between    B.over    C. among    D. about
8. My father began to work \_\_\_\_ a bus driver when he was twenty years old.  
A.for    B.to    C.at    D.as
9. \_\_\_\_ hearing the news, I was wild \_\_\_\_ joy.  
A. At, in    B. On, with    C. After, by    D. /, over
- 10.I don't think Xiao Li is \_\_\_\_ the other students \_\_\_\_ mathematics.  
A. after, on    B. after, with    C. behind, in    D. behind, at
11. Nobody knows it \_\_\_\_ me.  
A. except for    B. except that    C. besides    D. but
- 12.The window is never opened \_\_\_\_ in summer.  
A. but    B. except    C. except for    D. but for
13. It happened \_\_\_\_ the Long March.  
A. during    B.in    C.at    D.for
14. We go to school \_\_\_\_ a bike.  
A.in    B.on    C.by    D.over
15. It's very kind \_\_\_\_ you to repair the bike \_\_\_\_ me.  
A.for.for    B.of,of    C.of,for    D.for,of
16. Fresh air is good \_\_\_\_ your health.  
A.at    B.for    C.of    D.to

17. The boy is waiting \_\_\_\_ his sister and they will go to the hospital to wait \_\_\_\_ their sick mother.

- A. for, on      B. on, for      C. for, for      D. on, on

18. The group is made up \_\_\_\_ five students. And they are studying hard to make up \_\_\_\_ the lost time.

- A. of, of      B. for, for      C. of, for      D. for, of

19. The PLA man saved the boy \_\_\_\_ death.

- A. of      B. from      C. to      D. on

20. He will come \_\_\_\_ three days.

- A. before      B. after      C. in      D. later

21. He went to Beijing and returned \_\_\_\_ three days.

- A. in      B. before      C. later      D. after

22. He will return \_\_\_\_ three o'clock.      A. after      B. in      C. on      D. at

23. He wrote the article \_\_\_\_ three days.      A. at      B. in      C. on      D. by

24. I agree \_\_\_\_ what you said.      A. to      B. on      C. with      D. at

25. Do you agree \_\_\_\_ this plan (arrangement)?      A. at      B. with      C. on      D. to

26. Finally they agreed \_\_\_\_ the terms of the contract.      A. on      B. to      C. with  
D. at

27. Do you often hear \_\_\_\_ your brother?      A. of      B. from      C. out of      D.  
about

28. I heard \_\_\_\_ the book long ago, but I have never read it.

- A. out      B. from      C. of      D. with

29. The plane flew \_\_\_\_ the city.

- A. across      B. past      C. through      D. over

30. We walked \_\_\_\_ the Tian An Men Square to the Museum of Chinese History.

- A. across      B. through      C. by      D. past

### 答案与解析

### 基础训练

1. C。表示在几点钟用介词 **at**。所以选择 C。
2. B。表示在某一个月、某一年等较长的一段时间时用介词 **in**。所以选择 B。
3. A。固定搭配的短语 **be late for** 表示“迟到”的意思。所以选择 A。
4. C。固定搭配的短语 **be proud of** 表示“为……骄傲、自豪”的意思。所以选 C。
5. C。从句子的意思理解是用连词 **or** 表示选择关系，所以选择 C。
6. D。表示在早上、上午、下午和晚上用介词 **in**，但是在某一个具体的某天早上、下午、晚上用介词 **on**。所以选择 D。
7. D。本题是考查介词 **except** 的用法，表示“除了之外”用 **except**，表示不包括在内。**besides** 表示“除了之外还有”，指包括在内。从下文看出，Zhang Hua 没有完成作业，不包括在前面所说之列，所以选择 D。
8. C。表示用某种语言用介词 **in**。所以选择 C。
9. B。介词 **in** 和表示一段时间的状语连用表示在……之后，常与一般将来时连用，所以选择 B。
10. D。本题是考查介词的用法，表示在早上、上午、下午和晚上用介词 **in**，但是在某一个具体的某一天早上、下午、晚上用介词 **on**。
11. A。 本题考查 **at** 表示地点的用法，用在小地方，指附近，**at the window** 意为“在窗户旁边”。**along** 指“沿着”，**running along the street**（正沿街跑）
12. B。**on** 表示时间，指具体的某一天或某一天的某一时段。
13. D。**play with** 是固定搭配，意为“玩弄”
14. B。用在某一具体时刻点前用介词 **at**，用在某一天的某一时段用介词 **on**。这里“**Let's make it half past eight**”是惯用句式，不用 **at**。
15. B。**by bike** 固定搭配，意为“骑自行车”，但不能作谓语，只作方式状语。

### 提升训练

1. A. with, in  
解析：老师用粉笔（**with a piece of chalk**）在黑板上写字，学生用墨水（**in ink**）在练习本上写字。“**with**”表示使用的工具，“**in**”表示使用的材料或媒介。
2. B. of, from  
解析：工人用木头制作椅子（**make chairs of wood**，表示材料可见），用木头造纸（**make paper from wood**，表示材料不可见或经过加工）。
3. C. on, at  
解析：**drop in on sb.**（顺便拜访某人），**drop in at a place**（顺便拜访某地）。玛丽去拜访史密斯先生（**on Mr Smith**），但他不在家，于是去了他的办公室（**at his office**）。
4. D. with, in  
解析：**be strict with sb.**（对某人严格），**be strict in sth.**（对某事严格）。老师不仅对学生严格，也对自己的工作严格。
5. A. from, of

解析: die from (死于外因, 如受伤), die of (死于内因, 如饥饿或寒冷)。祖父因敌人的枪伤而死 (from the wound), 祖母因饥寒交迫而死 (of hungry and cold)。

6. B. after

解析: run after (追逐)。谚语“追逐两只兔子, 一只也抓不到”。

7. C. among

解析: among (在……之间, 指三者或以上)。这是学生中常见的错误。

8. D. as

解析: work as (担任……职务)。父亲 20 岁时开始担任公交车司机。

9. B. On, with

解析: on hearing (一听到……就……), wild with joy (欣喜若狂)。我一听到这个消息就欣喜若狂。

10. C. behind, in

解析: behind (落后于), in (在某个方面)。我认为小李在数学上落后于其他学生。

11. D. but

解析: but (除了, 相当于 except)。除了我, 没人知道这件事。

12. B. except

解析: except (除了, 表示排除)。这扇窗户除了夏天从不打开。

13. A. during

解析: during (在……期间)。这件事发生在长征期间。

14. B. on

解析: on a bike (骑自行车)。我们骑自行车上学。

15. C. of, for

解析: It's kind of you (你真好), repair the bike for me (为我修自行车)。你真好, 帮我修自行车。

16. B. for

解析: be good for (对……有益)。新鲜空气对你的健康有益。

17. A. for, on

解析: wait for sb. (等待某人), wait on sb. (侍候或照顾某人)。男孩在等他的姐姐, 他们将去医院照顾生病的母亲。

18. C. of, for

解析: be made up of (由……组成), make up for (弥补)。这个小组由五名学生组成, 他们正在努力学习以弥补失去的时间。

19. B. from

解析: save sb. from (从……中救出某人)。解放军战士从死亡中救出了这个男孩。

20. C. in

解析: in + 时间段 (将来时中表示“多久之后”)。他将在三天后回来。

21. D. after

解析: after + 时间段 (过去时中表示“多久之后”)。他去了北京, 三天后回来了。

22. A. after

解析: after + 具体时间点 (表示“在……之后”)。他将在三点后回来。

23. B. in

解析: in + 时间段 (表示“花费多少时间完成”)。他花了三天时间写这篇文章。

24. C. with

解析: agree with (同意某人的观点)。我同意你说的话。

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

25. D. to

解析: agree to (同意计划、安排等)。你同意这个计划吗?

26. A. on

解析: agree on (就.....达成一致)。最终他们就合同条款达成一致。

27. B. from

解析: hear from (收到某人的来信)。你经常收到你兄弟的来信吗?

28. C. of

解析: hear of (听说过)。我很久以前就听说过这本书，但从未读过。

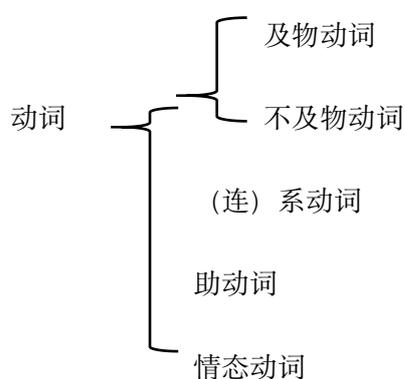
29. D. over

解析: fly over (飞越)。飞机飞越城市上空。

30. A. across

解析: walk across (横穿)。我们穿过天安门广场走向中国历史博物馆。

## 第九课: 动词与情态动词



### • 及物动词

一般情况下，及物动词后跟宾语意义才能完整。

例:

What I admire is not what you have, but what you are. 我所仰慕的是你，而不是你拥有的。

### • 不及物动词

不能也不需要直接跟宾语的动词。

例:

Please don't hesitate. 请不要犹豫。

(1) 不及物动词+副词

例:

The war broke in 1894. 1894 年战争爆发。

He didn't want to fall behind in his study. 他不愿意在学习上落后。

(2) 不及物动词+介词

例:

They got off the bus. 他们下车了。

We join in the march. 他们参加了游行。

### • 系动词

系动词的种类与用法

系动词后面可以跟形容词或者名词构成系表结构

(9) be 翻译为“是”

这个系动词最常用的最广泛

例:

Death is the great leveler. 死亡面前人人平等。+n

Art is long, but life is short. 人生有限，学海无涯。+adj

(10) appear 表示“看上去，显得”

例:

Don't make him appear a fool. 别把他弄得跟傻子似的。+n

His influence was considerable but now he appears ridiculous. 他原先影响很大现在却成了小丑。+adj

(11) become/get/turn 表示“变得，成为”

例:

He became a teacher 10 years ago. 他十年前成为了一个老师。+n

Think more, and you will become wiser. 多思考，你会变得更睿智。+adj

They have finally decided to get married. 他们最终决定 结婚。+adj

You are getting quite a beautiful lady now. 你现在都长成一个漂亮的淑女了。+n

注: become 和 get 区别:

become 是指身份、职位的变化，作瞬间动词时指状态的变化。

get 常指某人或某物有意无意地获得引起变化的因素，结果使变成另一状态。

(12) fall “陷入”

例:

She fell an easy prey to his charm. 她一下子就被他迷住了。 +n

He fell ill again. 他又生病了。+adj

(13) **Keep/stay** 表示“保持，处于”

例:

We must keep quite. 我们必须保持安静。+adj

She stay single all her life. 她一辈子都单身。+adj

(14) **remain** 表示“继续处于某种状态”

例:

His death remains a mystery. 他的去世任然是个谜。+n

The author chooses to remain anonymous. 作者不愿意署名。+adj

(15) **prove** 表示“证明是”

例:

The task proved more difficult than we had imagined. 那个任务比我们想象的难。+adj

His wealth proved a curse to him. 他的财富最后害了他。+n

(16) 感官动词类 表示“...起来”

6) 视觉: 看起来

a. **look**

例:

He looks in very good health. 他看起来气色好极了。

b. **seem**

例:

If the world seems cold to you, kindle fires to warm it.

如果这个世界很冰冷，那就去点燃火把温暖它。

7) 听觉: **sound** 表示“听起来”

例:

The story sounds phoney to me. 我觉得这个故事听起来很假。

8) 味觉: **taste** 表示“尝起来...”

例:

My first attempt at a cake tasted horrible. 我第一次做的蛋糕难吃极了。

9) 嗅觉: **smell** 表示“闻起来...”

例:

Your breath smells terrible. 你呼吸闻起来糟透了。

10) 触觉/感觉: **feel** 表示“摸起来..., 感觉”

例:

That drink has made me feel quite bad. 那种饮料让我感觉不舒服。

Your forehead feels hot. 你额头摸起来很烫。

## • 动词的五种基本形式

### 1. 动词原型

其他形式都由此派生而来，不做任何变化就是原型。

例：

Years bring wisdom. 岁月带来智慧。

### 2. 第三人称单数

例：

He likes playing basketball. 他喜欢打篮球。

规则	变化
一般动词加-s	play---plays
以 s,x,sh,ch 和 o 结尾的，一般加-es	express---expresses wash---washes watch---watches do---does
以辅音加 y 结尾的，改 y 为 i 再加-es	rely---relies

### 3. 过去式/过去分词

动词过去式主要用来构成一般过去时，过去分词用于构成完成时和被动语态。

规则/类别	动词原形	过去式	过去分词
一般情况直接加-ed	help	helped	helped
以不发音的 e 结尾的，直接加-d	like	liked	liked
以辅音加 y 结尾的，改 y 为 i 再加-ed	try	tried	tried
重度闭音节结尾，且词尾只有一个辅音字母，则双写这个字母后加-ed	stop	stopped	stopped

注：重读闭音节的三要素如下：

1. 一个元音字母后跟一个或几个辅音字母，他们组成的音节必须是重读音节；
2. 以一个辅音音素结尾，如：hit, big;
3. 元音字母发短元音 (a[æ], e[e], i[i], o[ɔ], u[ʌ][u]) 。

动词过去式/过去分词不规则变化：

动词原形	中文意思	过去式	过去分词
arise	出现	arose	arisen
awake	醒来	awoke	awaked / awoken
baby-sit	临时照顾	baby-sat	baby-sat
be(am / is / are)		was / were	been

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

beat	击打	beat	beaten
become	变成	became	become
begin	开始	began	begun
bend	使弯曲	bent	bent
bet	赌	bet	bet
bite	咬	bit	bitten / bit
blow	吹	blew	blown
break	打破	broke	broken
bring	拿来	brought	brought
build	建造	built	built
burn	燃烧	burnt / burned	burnt / burned
buy	买	bought	bought
can	能	could	×
cast	抛	cast	cast
catch	捕捉	caught	caught
choose	选择	chose	chosen
come	来	came	come
cost	花费	cost	cost
cut	割	cut	cut
deal	分配	dealt	dealt
dig	挖	dug	dug
do / does	做	did	done
draw	画，拉，拖	drew	drawn
dream	做梦	dreamed / dreamt	dreamed / dreamt
drink	喝	drank	drunk
drive	驾驶	drove	driven
eat	吃	ate	eaten
fall	掉落	fell	fallen
feed	喂	fed	fed
feel	触摸	felt	felt
fight	作战	fought	fought
find	找出	found	found
fly	飞	flew	flown
forbid	禁止	forbade / forbad	forbidden
forget	忘记	forgot	forgot / forgotten
forgive	原谅	forgave	forgiven
freeze	结冰	froze	frozen
get	得到	got	got
give	给	gave	given
go	去	went	gone
grow	成长	grew	grown
hang	挂 / 绞死	hung / hanged	hung / hanged
have / has	有	had	had
hear	听到	heard	heard

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

hide	隐藏	hid	hidden / hid
hit	打	hit	hit
hold	拿住	held	held
hurt	受伤	hurt	hurt
keep	保持	kept	kept
know	知道	knew	known
lay	放置	laid	laid
lead	引导	led	led
learn	学习	learnt / learned	learnt / learned
leave	离开	left	left
lend	借贷	lent	lent
let	让	let	let
lie	躺	lay	lain
light	点着	lit / lighted	lit / lighted
lose	遗失	lost	lost
make	制作	made	made
may	可以	might	×
mean	表…意思	meant	meant
meet	遇到	met	met
mistake	误认	mistook	mistaken
misunderstand	误会	misunderstood	misunderstood
pay	支付	paid	paid
prove	证明	proved	proved / proven
put	放置	put	put
quit	放弃	quit / quitted	quit / quitted
read	读	read	read
rebuild	改建	rebuilt	rebuilt
retell	复述	retold	retold
rid	免除	rid / rided	rid / rided
ride	骑	rode	ridden
rise	上升	rose	risen
run	跑	ran	run
saw	锯	sawed	sawed / sawn
say	说	said	said
see	看	saw	seen
seek	寻觅	sought	sought
sell	卖	sold	sold
send	送 / 寄	sent	sent
set	安置	set	set
sew	缝合	sewed	sewn / sewed
shake	摇	shook	shaken
shall	将	should	×
shine	发光 擦亮	shone shined	shone shined

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

shoot	放 (炮)	shot	shot
show	显露	showed	showed / shown
sing	唱歌	sang	sung
sink	下沉	sank / sunk	sunk / sunken
sit	坐	sat	sat
sleep	睡	slept	slept
smell	发出气味	smelt	smelt
sow	种植	sowed	sown / sowed
speak	说	spoke	spoken
spell	拼写	spelt / spelled	spelt / spelled
spend	花费	spent	spent
spit	吐出	spat / spit	spat / spit
spring	跳跃	sprang / sprung	sprung
stand	站立	stood	stood
steal	偷	stole	stolen
sweep	打扫	swept	swept
swim	游泳	swam	swum
take	拿	took	taken
teach	教	taught	taught
tear	撕裂	tore	torn
tell	告诉	told	told
think	思考	thought	thought
throw	投 / 扔	threw	thrown
understand	了解	understood	understood
wake	醒着	woke / waked	waked / woken
wear	穿着	wore	worn
wet	淋湿	wet / wetted	wet / wetted
will	将	would	×
win	获胜	won	won
write	书写	wrote	written

#### 4. 现在分词

规则	动词原形	现在分词
一般情况下直接加-ing	buy	buying
以不发音的 e 结尾的，去 e 再加-ing	continue	continuing
重度闭音节，末尾只有一个辅音，双写这个辅音再加-ing	begin	beginning
少数以-ie 结尾的动词，先变 ie 为 y 再加 ing	die lie tie	dying lying tying
以-oe, -ee, -ye 结尾的动词，直接加-ing	see	seeing

## · 情态动词

### 1. 情态动词的两种功能

#### 1) 表能力

例:

He speaks English. 他说英语。

He can speak English. 他能说英语。

#### 2) 表推测

例:

He is right. 他是对的。

He could be right. 或许他是对的。

在表示推测时，部分情态动词及其可能性大小排序（降序）：

He is right.

He must be right.

He will be right.

He would be right.

He should be right.

He can be right.

He may be right.

He could be right.

He might be right. (could 和 might 意思相近，could 可能性略大一点点)

He isn't be right.

注：can 表示推测时，一般不用于肯定句（用在肯定句 can 可以表示“理论上可能”），而是用在否定句或者疑问句中。

例:

He can't be right. 他不可能对。

He can hardly right. 他不太可能对。

Do you think he can be right? 你觉得他有可能对吗？

### 2. 几个情态动词的辨析（除推测）

#### 1) can 的用法

##### a. 表示能力

例:

You can speak Spanish. 你会说西班牙语。

##### b. 表示“可以做，有时会”

例:

No man can lose what he never had. 没有人会失去他从来没有拥有过的东西。

It can be quite cold here at night. 这里的夜晚有时会很冷。

## 2) could 的用法

### a. 表示过去的“能力”

例:

When I was young, I could climb any tree in the forest. 小时候森林里的树我都能爬上去。

### b. 有礼貌地请求或者建议

例:

Could you do me a favor? 你能帮我个忙吗?

### c. 表示虚拟语气

例:

I wish I could fly. 如果我能飞多好啊。

## 3) may 的用法

### a. 表示征求对方意见

例:

May I leave this with you? 我可以把东西放在你这里么?

### b. 表示同意

例:

You may not take photos in the museum. 博物馆内不准拍照。

### c. 表示祝愿

例:

Life is a school, may I graduate well. 生活是一所学校，愿我能顺利毕业。

## 4) might 的用法

表示许可

例:

He asked if he might go home. 他问他是否能回家。

## 5) must 的用法

### a. 表示“必须”或“应当做”

We must accept finite disappointment, but we must never lose infinite hope.

我们必须接受有限的失望，但必须不能失去无限的希望。

You must go and see the new movie. 你应该去看那部新电影。

### b. 表示语气的责备或强调

责备时表示“偏要”

例:

Why must it rain on Sunday? 为什么为什么偏要在星期天下雨?

用于口语中，可表示强调

例:

I must admit, I was looking forward to it. 我得承认，我一直期盼着它。

注：表示“必须”时否定形式是 mustn't

表示“一定”时，否定形式是 " can't "

如： We must be very careful when we cross the road.

It must be Jack, I haven't seen Kate today, she can't be here.

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

注意用 **must** (必须) 必须进行提时, 肯定回答用 **must** , 否定回答用 **needn't**;  
用 **must** (一定) 进行提问时, 肯定回答仍用 **must**, 但是否定回答用 **can't**.  
如: **Must we clean the room before we leave?** – Yes, you must./ No, you needn't.  
**Must she be in the room?** – Yes, she must. / No, she can't.

#### 6) **have to** 的用法

" **have to** " 表示 “不得不”、“必须”。

例:

**We'll have to leave now for it is very late at night.**

很晚了, 我们必须离开了

**have to** 的疑问形式是: 助动词 + **have to** 如: **Do you have to stay until 8 o'clock?**

否定形式是: 助动词 + **not** + **have to** 或者用 **needn't**

**You don't have to do so. = You needn't do so.**

#### 7) **would** 的用法

**would** 表示过去的“意愿”“决心”等。

例:

**He would sit near the fire every time he returned home.**

他每次回家都会坐在火堆旁。

也可以表示现在的情况, 表达说话人向对方提出的要求, 语气比 “**will**” 婉转、客气。

在日常会话中, “我想要…” 通常用 “**I would like to**” 或 “**I should (I'd like to)**” 来表示。如: **Would you like to have a rest at the moment?**

你想要休息一下么?

**would** 还可以表示过去经常发生的事情。

如: **Every year parents would tell their children about the boy who would save his people.**

每一年父母都会告诉他们的孩子关于一个男孩拯救了他的人民的故事。

#### 8) **need** 的用法

a. 在否定句中, 表示 “不必”

例:

**We needn't hurry, for there's plenty of time.**

我们不必着急, 因为时间还很多。

b. 用在疑问句中, 表示 “需要”

**Need I come tomorrow?** 明天我需要来么?

注: **don't need** 和 **needn't** 的区别是 **needn't** 中的 **need** 是情态动词, 其否定形式后加动词原形, **don't need** 中的 **need** 是实义动词, 后面要加动词不定式, 即 **to do**., **need** 既可用作情态动词, 也可用作实义动词。

### 9) dare 的用法

dare 作为情态动词表示“敢”，没有人称形式变化，但有过去式，dared

a. 用于否定句，表示“不敢”

例:

I dare not go out alone at night. 我自己一个人晚上不敢出去。

b. 用于从句，表示“敢”

例:

How dare you speak to me like that? 你怎么敢那样对我说话的?

## 作业与练习

### 基础训练

- The last bus has gone. We \_\_\_\_ go home on foot.  
A. could            B. must            C. have to            D. can
- \_\_\_\_ you please tell me how to get to the airport?  
A. Shall            B. May            C. Should            D. Will
- Post the letter for me when you go out, \_\_\_\_ you?  
A. will            B. do            C. don't            D. shall
- I \_\_\_\_ work out the maths problem yesterday, but I can work it out now.  
A. can't    B. couldn't    C. may not    D. needn't
- Judging by her accent, she \_\_\_\_ be an American.  
A. can't            B. mustn't            C. needn't            D. will
- \_\_\_\_ you turn down your radio, please?  
—Yes, I can.  
A. May    B. Need    C. Must    D. Can
- Can I wear any clothes I like to school?  
—No, you can't. You \_\_\_\_ wear a uniform.  
A. might    B. must    C. will    D. would
- Everyone \_\_\_\_ go through the security check (安检) when entering the World Expo Park.  
A. can    B. may    C. must    D. ought
- Must I clean the room now?  
—No, you \_\_\_\_\_. You can do it tomorrow.  
A. mustn't    B. must    C. needn't    D. need

10. —I saw Kevin in the supermarket this morning.  
—No, it \_\_\_\_\_ him. He moved to Canada last week.  
A. can be    B. must be    C. can't be    D. mustn't be
11. —Look at that girl! Is it Susan?  
—No, it \_\_\_\_\_ be her. She has gone back to her hometown.  
A. mustn't    B. can't    C. needn't    D. wouldn't
12. I'm feeling much better now so you \_\_\_\_\_ call the doctor.  
A. couldn't    B. wouldn't    C. can't    D. needn't
13. —Dad, must I do my homework now?  
—No. You \_\_\_\_\_ play games with your friends for a little while.  
A. would    B. needn't    C. may    D. must
14. —What will the weather be like tomorrow?  
—It \_\_\_\_\_ be rainy, cloudy or sunny. Who knows?  
A. must    B. might    C. shall    D. should
15. —How was the youth club last night, Mark?  
—It was great fun. You \_\_\_\_\_ come.  
A. must    B. can    C. should    D. may

### 答案与解析

#### 基础训练

1. C. 这里是表示客观需要，意为“不得不”。
2. D. Will you please do...这是一个固定句型，表示请求，意为“请你做某事好吗？”。
3. A. 考查祈使句的反义疑问句，附加问句常用 will you，表示请求。
4. B. 由 yesterday 可知用 couldn't 而不用 can't。
5. A. 这里 can't 表示对现在情况的否定推测，意为“不可能是”。
6. D. 本题考查情态动词的用法。由答句“Yes, I can.”可知答案为 D 项。
7. B. 句意：——我可以穿我喜欢的任何一件衣服去上学吗？——不，你不能。你必须穿校服。本题考查情态动词的用法。might 可能，也许；must 必须；will 将要；would 意愿。根据句意说话者要表达命令的语气，故选 B 项。
8. C. 句意：当进入世博园时，每个人必须通过安检。本题考查情态动词。can 能，可能；may 可以；must 必须；ought 应该。根据常识及实际情况，进入世博园必须安检。故选 C。
9. C. 句意：——我现在必须打扫房间吗？——不必，你可以明天打扫。本题考查情态动词。对 must 引起的疑问句的否定回答要用 needn't。
10. C. 本题考查了情态动词表推测的用法。根据后句“He moved to Canada last week.”可知说话者要表达“不可能”，故答案应为 C。can 表示“可能”时，常用于否定句和疑问句；must 表推测时，意为“一定”，常用于肯定句。

11. B。句意：——看那个女孩!是苏珊吗?——不，不可能是她。她已经回老家了。本题考查情态动词的用法。根据句意，可推断设空处表示“不可能”，故答案为 B 项。

12. D。句意：我现在感觉好多了，所有你没有必要去叫医生了。本题考查情态动词的用法。need 用作情态动词时通常用在否定句中，needn't 意为“没必要”，相当于 don't have to。

13. C。句意：——爸爸，现在我必须做作业吗?——不，你可以和你的朋友玩一会儿游戏。本题考查情态动词的用法。根据句意，可知设空处表示说话者的允许，故答案为 C 项。

14. B。句意：——明天的天气怎样?——可能有雨、多云或者晴天，谁知道呢?本题考查情态动词的用法。must 意为“一定”；might 意为“可能”，表示一种可能性，且可能性很小；shall 与第二、三人称连用表示说话者的建议、命令、允诺；should 意为“应该”，表示一种义务、责任或推断。根据题干中 Who knows?可知说话者对说话内容把握不大，故用 might。

15. C。句意：——Mark，你觉得昨晚的青年俱乐部怎么样?——非常有趣。你应该来的。本题考查情态动词的用法。must 一定；can 能；should 应该；may 可以。根据语境：聚会是在昨晚已举行过，Mark 觉得很有趣，对方应该来，故用情态动词 should。

## 第十课：时态和语态

时态：

时态是英语谓语动词的一种形式，表示动作发生的时间和所处的状态。英语中的时态是通过动词本身的变化来实现的。英语有 16 种时态，但专升本阶段较常用的有十种：一般现在时，一般过去时，一般将来时，过去将来时，现在进行时，过去进行时，将来进行时，现在完成时，过去完成时，将来完成时。

	一般	进行	完成	完成进行
现在	do/does am/is/are	am/is/are +doing	has/have done	has/have been doing
过去	Was/were did	Was/were +doing	Had done	Had been doing
将来	Will/shall do Be going to Be about to	Will be doing	Will have done	Will have been doing

一般现在时：

表示经常发生的动作或存在的状态 常与 every day , on Sundays, sometimes , often ,

usually ,always,等连用

结构：

第一第二人称：主语+动词原形+其他

I love the famous singer.

They visit their parents once a month.

第三人称：主语+动词“三单”+其他

She likes it very much.

He likes singing.

一般现在时否定式

[ be + not  
don' t do / doesn' t do

I am a teacher.

I' m not a teacher.

I like English.

I don' t like English.

She likes it very much.

She doesn' t like it very much.

一般现在时的疑问形式：

一般疑问句

概念：用 yes 或 no 来回答的疑问句叫做一般疑问句。

(1) .对于 be 动词，疑问句要求把 be 提前，第一人称变成第二人称。

I am a teacher. Are you a teacher?

(2) .对于实意动词，疑问句要求是：当主语是他(he)，她(she)，它(it)时，句子前面加 does，并把动词恢复原形；当主语是其他人称时，句前加 do，第一人称(I/we) 换第二人称(you)。

I often go there. Do you often go there ?

He goes to work by bus . Does he go to work by bus ?

### 一般现在时的用法

1. 经常性或习惯性的动作，常与表示频度的时间状语连用。时间状语： every…， sometimes, at…， on Sundays 等。

I leave home for school at 7: 00 every morning.

2. 客观真理，客观存在，科学事实。

The earth moves around the sun.

3. 表示格言或警句。注意：此用法如果出现在宾语从句中，即使主句是过去时，从句谓语也要用一般现在时。

Columbus proved that the earth is round.

### 一般过去时：

一般过去时主要要注意动词的变化

1. 含有 be 动词的一般过去式

She is in Beijing.

She was in Beijing .

## 2. 不含 be 动词的一般过去时

不含 be 动词的句子改写成一般过去时，把句子中的动词改为过去式形式。(回忆动词的变化)

I go to school by bike every day.

I went to school by bike yesterday.

一般过去时的用法

1. 在确定的过去时间里所发生的动作或存在的状态。时间状语有: yesterday, last week, an hour ago, the other day, in 1982 等。例如:

Where did you go just now?

刚才你上哪儿去了?

2. 表示在过去一段时间内，经常性或习惯性的动作。如:

When I was a child, I often played football at the street.

当我是个孩子的时候，常在马路上踢足球。

3. 表示某种情感色彩

You deserved it! 你活该! (责备)

He asked for it! 他自找的! (责备)

4. 用于代替一般现在时，使口气显得更缓和，更客气 (常用于陌生人之间)

I wondered if you could do me a favour. 不知你可否帮我一个忙。

I hoped you could give me some advice. 我希望你能帮我出点主意。

## 一般将来时

相对于讲话时间将要发生的动作或情况，常用以下结构表达一般将来时:

1. shall 用于第一人称，常被 will 所代替。will 在陈述句中用于各种人称，在征求意见时常用于第二人称。

结构: will/shall+do

Which paragraph shall I read first?

我先读哪一段呢?

2. be going + 不定式，表示将来。

a. 主语意图，即将做某事。例如:

What are you going to do tomorrow?

你明天打算做什么呢?

b. 计划，安排要发生的事。例如:

The play is going to be produced next month.

这出戏下月开播。

c. 有迹象要发生的事。例如:

Look at the dark clouds, there is going to be a storm.

看那乌云，暴风雨快要来了。

3. 一般现在时表将来

a. 下列动词 come, go, arrive, leave, start, begin, return 的一般现在时可以表示将来，主要

用来表示在时间上已确定或安排好的事情。

When does the bus start? It starts in ten minutes.

汽车什么时候开？十分钟后。

b. 以 here, there 等开始的倒装句，表示动作正在进行。

There goes the bell. = The bell is ringing.铃响了。

c.在时间或条件句中。

I'll write to you as soon as I arrive there.

我一到那里就写信给你。

d.在动词 hope, take care that, make sure that 等的宾语从句中。

I hope they have a nice time next week.

我希望他们下星期玩得开心。

### 现在进行时

结构：am/is/are+ doing

1.表示现在(指说话人说话时)正在发生的事情。

We are waiting for you.

我们正在等你。

2.习惯进行：表示长期的或重复性的动作，说话时动作未必正在进行。

Mr.Green is writing another novel.

格林先生在写另一部小说。(说话时并未在写，只处于写作的状态)

3. 表示渐变，这样的动词有：get, grow, become, turn, run, go, begin 等。

The leaves are turning red.

叶子在变红。

4. 与 always, constantly, forever 等词连用，表示反复发生的动作或持续存在的状态，往往带有说话人的主观色彩。

You are always changing your mind.

你老是改变主意。

### 过去进行时：

结构：was/were+doing

过去进行时的用法与现在进行时相仿，表示过去某时刻或阶段正在进行的动作。

1. 用于表示过去某一时间正在进行的动作，常有时间状语 then, at that moment, at that time 等。

He was boasting about how brave he was at the start, but copped out at the finish.

他起初夸耀自己勇敢，但最后打起了退堂鼓。

2. 用于描写故事的情景或提供故事发生的时间背景。

The fire was burning fiercely, children were crying.

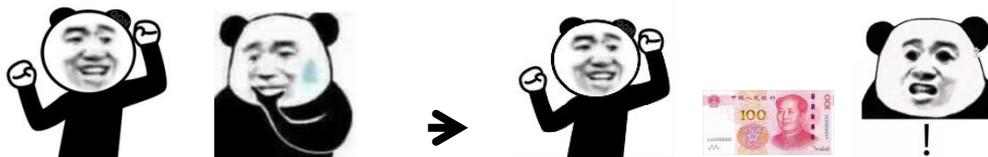
火猛烧，孩子们猛哭。

### 将来进行时

结构：will/shall be doing

从现在开始算起的将来某个时间正在进行的动作，和一般将来时有细微差别。

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。



I will be doing my best. 我将尽自己最大的努力。

I will do my best. 我愿尽最大的努力。

### 现在完成时

现在完成时用来表示之前已发生或完成的动作或状态，其结果的影响现在还存在；也可表示持续到现在的动作或状态。

其构成：have (has) + 过去分词。

常用于 since+ “点时间” 或 for+ “段时间” 的时间状语

I have studied English { since I was 8.  
for 10 years.

比较一般过去时与现在完成时

1. 一般过去时表示过去某时发生的动作或单纯叙述过去的事情，强调动作；现在完成时强调过去的事情对现在的影响，强调的是影响。

I saw this film yesterday.

我昨天看到了这部电影。(强调看的动作发生过了)

I have seen this film.

我已经看过这部电影了。(强调对现在的影响，电影的内容已经知道了)

2. 一般过去时常与具体的时间状语连用，而现在完成时通常与模糊的时间状语连用，或无时间状语。

(错) Tom has written a letter to his parents last night.

(对) Tom wrote a letter to his parents last night.

现在完成时可表示持续到现在的动作或状态，动词一般是延续性的，如 live, teach, learn, work, study, know。

用于现在完成时的句型

1) It is the first/second time...that...结构中的从句部分用现在完成时。

例如：

This is the first time (that) I've heard him sing.

这是我第一次听他唱歌。

注意：It was the third time that the boy had been late.

2) This is + 形容词最高级 + that...结构，that 从句要用现在完成时。

例如：

This is the best film that I've (ever) seen.

这是我看过的最好的电影。

### 过去完成时

1) 概念: 表示过去的过去(had done)。

2) 用法:

a. 在 told, said, knew, heard, thought 等动词后的宾语从句。如:

She said (that) she had never been to Paris.

她说她从来没有去过巴黎。

b. 在状语从句中，在过去不同时间发生的两个动作中，发生在先，用过去完成时；发生在后，用一般过去时。

When the police arrived, the thieves had run away.

警察到达时，小偷们早就跑了。

c. 表示意向的动词，如 hope, wish, expect, think, intend, mean, suppose 等，用过去完成时表示“原本……，但未能……”。

We had hoped that you would come, but you didn't.

那时我们希望你能来，但是你没有来。

### 将来完成进行时

构成: will/shall have done

1. 表示将来某时，某事之前已在发生的动作，一直延续到将来某一时间。

It will have been raining for whole week if it rains again tomorrow.

2. 表示推测，含有“料想，大概”的意思。

They will have been having a holiday next week.

### 被动语态

主动语态表示主语是动作的执行者，那么被动语态则表示主语是动作的承受着（即：主语和宾语位置互换）

英语中，用 be+p.p 表示被动语态

具体来讲:

1. 现在时的被动语态

例句: Sarah teaches English.

首先主谓互换位置

即: English.....Sarah

然后把谓语变成 be+p.p 形式

即: ...is taught...

最后把主动语态的主语变成“by+宾语”

即: English is taught by Sarah.

2. 过去时的被动语态

过去时的句子变成被动语态与现在时原理相同。只需要记住，过去时的句子变成被动语态，也应该是过去时。

例句： They painted those pictures.

首先无论什么时态，把宾语放在前面

即： Those pictures...

然后谓语变成 be+p.p 形式，原来动词是过去式，那么变成 were painted

最后原来的主语变成 “by+宾格” 即可

即： Those pictures were painted by them.

### 3. 将来时的被动语态

例： she will finish the work

宾语放前： the work...

谓语变成 be+p.p will finish 的被动语态是 will be finished

把原来的主语变成 by+宾格

即： the work will be finished by her.

### 4. 进行时的被动语态

She was washing the car

The car was being washed by her

### 5. 完成时被动语态

Jane has cleaned the room.

The room has been cleaned by Jane.

### 6. 否定句的被动语态

She did not write the card

首先把宾语移到前面

The card...

Did not write 变成 be+p.p be 动词的否定实在 be 动词后面加 not, 所以是 be not p.p

即 was not written

最后把原来的主语变成 “by+宾格”

即 the card was not written by her.

### 7. 疑问句的被动语态

(1) 一般疑问句

Did you find the book?

首先把句子还原为陈述句，即： you found the book

再把这个句子变成被动语态，即： the book was found by you

最后再改为疑问句

Was the book found by you?

(2) 特殊疑问句

特殊疑问句原理也是一样的

When did you build this house?

改成陈述句： you built this house

再变为被动语态： this house was built by you

变为一般疑问句: was this house built by you?

再变为特殊疑问句: when was this house built by you?

### 主动表示被动的一些动词

动词的主动形式表示被动意义主要有三种:

第一种是感官动词, 如 look, taste, smell, sound, feel 等, 这些词后面常常接形容词, 表示被动意义, 意思是“……起来”

例:

This kind of food tastes delicious.

What you said just now sounds reasonable.

第二种是某些不及物动词表示事物内在的品质和属性, 如 sell, wash, write, teach, weigh, read, open, lock 等, 这些词用主动形式表示被动意义

例:

This kind of magazine sells well

The pen I bought yesterday writes smoothly.

第三种是一些不及物短语动词如, turn out, go on, break out, come out, come into being, take place, belong to 等.

His hard work turned out to be a success.

This pair of shoes is so tight that they will go on with difficulty.

## 作业与练习

### 基础训练

- Mum, I can't find my shoes.  
—Hurry up! Your father \_\_\_\_\_ for us.  
A. is waiting                      B. waited                      C. waits                      D. will wait
- Have you ever been to Shanghai, Mary?  
—Yes. I \_\_\_\_\_ there for three days with my parents last month.  
A. have gone                      B. have been                      C. went                      D. was
- Do you know if Cindy will drive to Italy this weekend?  
—Cindy? Never! She \_\_\_\_\_ driving.  
A. has hated                      B. hated                      C. will hate                      D. hates

4. —What do you think of the film “Avatar” ?  
—It’s fantastic. The only pity is that I \_\_\_\_\_ the beginning of it.  
A. missed      B. was missing      C. miss      D. will miss
5. Tommy is looking for the watch his uncle \_\_\_\_\_ him last month.  
A. gives      B. gave      C. to give      D. has given
6. Don’t make so much noise. The students \_\_\_\_\_ an English class.  
A. are having      B. have      C. had      D. were having
7. I \_\_\_\_\_ with some friends until I find a flat.  
A. am living      B. live      C. have lived      D. will have lived
8. You \_\_\_\_\_ television. Why not do something more active?  
A. always watch      B. are always watching  
C. have always watched      D. has always been watching
9. I have no idea what \_\_\_\_\_ while I was asleep.  
A. has happened      B. was happened      C. will happen      D. happened
10. — Oh, dear. I forgot the air tickets.  
— You \_\_\_\_\_ something.  
A. have left      B. are always leaving      C. are leaving      D. always left
11. Remember to send me a photo of us next time you \_\_\_\_\_ to me.  
A. are writing      B. will write      C. has written      D. write
12. I \_\_\_\_\_ ping-pong quite well, but I haven’t had time to play since the New Year.  
A. will play      B. have played      C. played      D. play
13. The sky is very dark now. I’m afraid it \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. rains      B. is going to rain  
C. is about raining      D. it would rain
14. —Is this raincoat yours?  
—No, mine \_\_\_\_\_ there behind the door.  
A. hangs      B. has hung      C. is hanging      D. hung
15. I \_\_\_\_\_ here until you give me some money.  
A. leave      B. will leave      C. shall leave      D. won’t leave

1. Every possible means \_\_\_\_\_ , but none prove successful.  
A. has tried            B. has been tried            C. is being tried            D. tried
  
2. \_\_\_\_\_ that they can pass the written exam this time.  
A. That is hoped            B. It is hoped            C. That hopes            D. It hopes
  
3. My little sister has broken my watch.            ---- My watch \_\_\_\_\_ by my little sister.  
A. is broken            B. has broken            C. have been broken            D. has been broken
  
4. He was cleaning his room when I entered the house.  
---- His room \_\_\_\_\_ by him when I entered the room.  
A. was being cleaned            B. was cleaned            C. was being cleaning            D. has been cleaned
  
5. I shall have Finished reading the novel by dinner time.  
---- This novel \_\_\_\_\_ reading (by me) by dinner time.  
A. will have finished            B. will has been finished  
C. will have being finished            D. will have been finished
  
6. You ought to keep these three rooms clean.            ----These three rooms \_\_\_\_\_ (by you).  
A. are oughted to keep clean            B. ought to kept clean  
C. ought to be kept clean            D. ought to have been kept clean
  
7. You are about to write a poem, aren't you?            ---- A poem \_\_\_\_\_ (by you), \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. is about to be written, aren't you            B. is about to be writing, isn' t it  
C. is about to be writing, aren't you            D. is about to be written, isn' t it
  
8. She had better leave a note to him.            ---- A note \_\_\_\_\_ to him (by her).  
A. had better left            B. had be better left            C. had better be left            D. had better been left
  
9. He doesn't do his homework every day.            ---- His homework \_\_\_\_\_ by him every day.  
A. doesn't be done            B. aren't done            C. don't be done            D. isn' t done
  
10. We must take care of our parents when they are old.            ---- Our parents \_\_\_\_\_ when they are old.  
A. must be taken care            B. must be took cars            C. must take care of            D. must be taken care of

11. People look down upon him because he is a liar. ---- He \_\_\_\_\_ because he is a liar.  
A. is looked down B. is looked down upon C. looks down upon D. looks down
12. Father will give me a dictionary on my birthday.  
---- A dictionary \_\_\_\_\_ me by Father on my birthday.  
A. shall be given to B. will give C. shall give to D. will be giving to
13. We elected her leader. ---- She \_\_\_\_\_ by us.  
A. is elected leader B. was leader elected C. was elected leader D. leader was elected
14. ---- People who live along this road receive their mail in these boxes.  
---- Why are all of the \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. grey painted mailboxes B. mailboxes grey painted  
C. mailboxes painted grey D. painted grey mailboxes
15. I saw him enter the room. ---- He \_\_\_\_\_ the room.  
A. is seen enter B. is seen to enter C. was seen to enter D. was seen enter
16. The question asked by him is hard \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. to answer B. to be answered C. to be answering D. for answer
17. How sweet the music \_\_\_\_\_!  
A. sounds to be B. is sounded C. is sounded to be D. sounds
18. In warm weather fruit and meat \_\_\_\_\_ long.  
A. don't keep B. cannot be kept C. are not kept D. are not keeping
19. He received a telegram \_\_\_\_ "Mother Sick."  
A. written B. said C. reading D. writing
20. The classroom \_\_\_\_\_ 30 feet long.  
A. measures B. is measured C. has D. has length
21. Do you remember \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. how it is done B. it how to be done C. How is it done by D. how to do
22. \_\_\_\_\_ to have been rich.  
A. They said B. It is said C. He is said D. That was said

23. Mathematics is difficult \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. to learn                      B. for learning                      C. to be learned                      D. of learning
24. My hair is so long that I must go to a barber's shop and \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. have to cut it                      B. have it cut                      C. get it to be cut                      D. to cut it
25. The pencil \_\_\_\_\_ well.  
A. writes                      B. is written                      C. was written                      D. writing
26. ---- I can't see the blackboard very well.      ---- Perhaps you need \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. to examine your eyes                      B. to have your eyes examined  
C. to have examined your eyes                      D. to be examined your eyes
27. ---- Where is the coffee table?      ---- Tom just had it \_\_\_\_\_ away.  
A. move                      B. moving                      C. moved                      D. moves
28. Good medicine \_\_\_\_\_ to the mouth.  
A. tastes bitter                      B. tastes bitterly                      C. is tasted bitter                      D. is tasted  
bitterly
29. Which girl won the prize? \_\_\_\_\_  
A. By which girl is the prize won?                      B. Which girl was the prize won?  
C. By which girl did she win the prize?                      D. By which girl was the prize won?
30. --- Where did you get that handsome picture?      ---- It was \_\_\_\_\_ by my father.  
A. given for us                      B. a gift to us                      C. given to us                      D. a gift for us
31. A young hen is \_\_\_\_\_ a chicken.  
A. named                      B. known                      C. spelled                      D. called

### 答案与解析

#### 基础训练

1. A. 根据情景可知此处表示“你父亲正在等我们”，应该使用现在进行时，故选A。  
2. D. 本题考查be动词的一般过去时，由last month和for three days可知用表示延续的be动词was。  
3. D. 本题考查动词的一般现在时的用法，Cindy讨厌开车是她的个性，所以用一般现在时描述，而且又是第三人称单数作主语，所以选D。  
4. A. 本题考查动词的一般过去时，由对话可知电影已经看过，就是错过了开头，所以是表示过去某一时段发生的动作，所以选A。  
5. B. 本题考查定语从句的时态，从句意为“手表是叔叔上个月给的”。由“last month”可知用一般过去时，所以选B。

6. A. 本题考查现在进行时的用法，表示此时此刻正在做的事。句意为“不要制造噪音，学生们正在上课。”
7. A. 从句子的句意“我和朋友住在一起（是暂时的不是长久的），找到住处我就会搬家。”可知是表示现阶段暂时的动作现在进行时。
8. B. 从句子的后面意思可知此处用现在进行时 **be always doing something** 来表示对人或事不满和责备。
9. D. 本句的关键点是 **while I was asleep** 表示的是过去的时间，“过去某时”发生的事只能用一般过去时。B 项的错误在于 **happen** 不能用被动语态。
10. B. 从对话的意思“你总是丢三落四的”可知是用进行时态与 **always** 连用，表示习惯性行为，且带有浓厚的感情色彩。所以选 B。
11. D. **next time** 所引导的是时间状语从句，从句的谓语要用一般现在时表示将来。
12. D. 从句子的意思理解“乒乓球打得好”是说明说话人的能力，所以用一般现在时。
13. B. 从句意理解表示将要下雨，所以用动词的一般将来时 **is going to rain** 表示可能发生。
14. C. 用现在进行时表示“我的雨衣正挂在门的后面”，所以选 C。
15. D. 本题是考查 **not ...until** 的用法，主句用一般将来时，从句用一般现在时，主句的谓语动词是瞬间动词，用否定形式，表示“直到……才”，所以选择 D。

### 提升训练

1. B. **has been tried**  
解析：“means”（方法）单复数同形，此处与“every”搭配视为单数，需用单数谓语。“has been tried”是被动语态，表示“所有方法都被尝试过”。
2. B. **It is hoped**  
解析：“It is hoped that...”是固定句型，表示“人们希望……”，“It”作形式主语。
3. D. **has been broken**  
解析：原句为现在完成时主动语态（has broken），被动语态需改为“has been broken”。
4. A. **was being cleaned**  
解析：原句为过去进行时（was cleaning），被动语态需用“was being cleaned”。
5. D. **will have been finished**  
解析：原句为将来完成时（shall have finished），被动语态需用“will have been finished”。
6. C. **ought to be kept clean**  
解析：“ought to”的被动形式为“ought to be + 过去分词”。
7. D. **is about to be written, isn't it**  
解析：“be about to”的被动形式为“be about to be + 过去分词”，反义疑问句与主句一致（isn't it）。
8. C. **had better be left**  
解析：“had better”的被动形式为“had better be + 过去分词”。
9. D. **isn't done**  
解析：原句为一般现在时否定（doesn't do），被动语态需用“isn't done”（主语为单数）。
10. D. **must be taken care of**  
解析：“take care of”的被动形式为“be taken care of”，“must”后接原形。
11. B. **is looked down upon**  
解析：“look down upon”的被动形式为“be looked down upon”。
12. A. **shall be given to**

解析：原句为将来时 (will give) ，被动语态需用 "shall/will be given to" 。

13. C. was elected leader

解析：原句为一般过去时 (elected) ，被动语态为 "was elected leader" (保留宾语补足语) 。

14. C. mailboxes painted grey

解析：过去分词 "painted" 作后置定语，修饰 "mailboxes" ，顺序为“名词+过去分词+颜色”。

15. C. was seen to enter

解析："see sb. do" 的被动形式为 "be seen to do" ，时态需与原句一致 (过去时) 。

16. A. to answer

解析："hard to answer" 是主动表被动结构，类似 "easy to use" 。

17. D. sounds

解析："sound" (听起来) 是系动词，无被动语态，直接接形容词。

18. A. don't keep

解析："keep" 在此表示“保存”，用主动形式表被动含义 (类似 "The book sells well") 。

19. C. reading

解析："read" 可表示“写着”，现在分词作后置定语 (a telegram reading...) 。

20. A. measures

解析："measure" (测量) 表示“长度为.....”时用主动形式。

21. D. how to do

解析："how to do" 是主动形式，若需宾语可加 "it" (how to do it) 。

22. C. He is said

解析："He is said to..." 是固定句型，表示“据说他.....”。

23. A. to learn

解析："difficult to learn" 是主动表被动结构，类似 "easy to understand" 。

24. B. have it cut

解析："have sth. done" 表示“让某事被做”。

25. A. writes

解析："write" 表示“写起来”时用主动形式 (类似 "The pen writes smoothly") 。

26. B. to have your eyes examined

解析："have sth. done" 表示“让他人做某事”。

27. C. moved

解析："have sth. done" 结构，此处为“让人搬走桌子”。

28. A. tastes bitter

解析："taste" 是系动词，接形容词 "bitter" ，无被动语态。

29. D. By which girl was the prize won?

解析：被动语态疑问句，需用 "by" 引出动作执行者。

30. C. given to us

解析："give" 的被动形式为 "be given to sb." 。

31. D. called

解析："be called" 表示“被称为”，其他选项语义不符。

## 十一课：名词性从句

主谓宾/主系表

主语? ---主语从句

宾语? ---宾语从句

表语? ---表语从句

同位语--同位语从句

主语从句: 主+谓+宾 n+v+n-----句子+v+n

注意:

1. 句子: 不是普通的句子; 句子必须陈述语序
2. 如果是一般现在时: v--vs

回忆之前的名词, 它的作用可以是充当主语, 宾语, 同位语以及表语。那么, 名词性从句实质上就是把一个句子看成一个名词, 从而有主语从句, 宾语从句, 同位语从句和表语从句。

引例:

She is a teacher.

她是个老师。

it is true.

这是真的。

She is a teacher. ---That

- 1, 缺少成分吗?
- 2, 意思完整吗?

n+v+that 从句

it is true.

She is a teacher is true. 语法错误 (两个谓语动词)

That she is a teacher is true.

“名词”

只有 that 么? 有没有别的?

That 在主从中的用法:

我们看到两个句子都是完整的句子，但是在中文我们可以合成一句话来说：她是个老师，这是真的。简单合并即可。但在英文里，没有连词的“帮助”下，我们不能简单合并。因为一个简单句只能有一个主谓宾结构。此时，我们需要把一个句子进行“词化”，即通过某种手段使得一个句子的功能变成一个单词，再进行连接即可。那么如何“词化”呢？

其实，如果想一个句子“词化”在一个主语从句中，非常简单，只需要在完整句子前加上 **that, whether** 以及 **wh-**类即可

比如上述句子：**that she is a teacher** (that 直接加在句子前面，但此时这个句子从功能上可以看成是一个名词)

It is true.

主 系 表

那么，只需要将“词化”后的句子，替代另一个句子的主语即可完成一个主语从句。

**That she is a teacher is true.**

那么另一个问题出现了，关系词什么时候用 **that**，什么时候用 **whether**，以及什么时候用 **wh-**呢？解决这个问题，那么名词性从句直接拿捏！

## • 主语从句

### 1. that 引导的主语从句

**that** 引导主语从句时，在**从句中不作为任何成分，也没有实际意义**，**that** 不可省略。

注：在用 **that** 引导主语从句时，从句必然是一个完整结构。

例:

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

The moon travels around the earth once every month.

It is known to everyone.

The moon travels around the earth once every month is known to everyone.

--That the moon travels around the earth once every month is known to everyone.

众所周知，月球每月绕地球运行一周。

注：形式主语 it 代替主语从句的形式

that 从句作主语通常用 it 作**形式主语**，而将 that 从句置于句末。常见的 it 代替主语从句的句式主要有如下几种：

1) It+系动词+形容词+that 从句

例：

It is obvious that you have made a big mistake.

很明显你犯了一个大错。

That you have made a big mistake is obvious.

形式主语：it

It is obvious that you have made a big mistake.

~~It~~ is today ~~that~~ you have made a big mistake.

如何区别形式主语和强调句呢？

强调句：不影响句子结构完整性

2) It+系动词+名词+that 从句

例：

It is no wonder that you are late again.

难怪你又迟到了。

3) It+be+动词-ed+that 从句

例：

It is **said/reported** that no one was injured in the accident.

据说/报道没有人在这个事故中受伤。

4) It+特殊动词+that 从句

例：

It turn out that everything goes well.

结果是一切顺利。

It seems to me that you don't like the idea.

在我看来你好像不喜欢这个主意。

It really matters that you have won the game.

你们赢了这场比赛，的确很关键。

## 2. whether 引导的主语从句

whether 引导的主语从句可置于句首，在从句中不充当任何成分，但翻译为是否例：

Can he finish his task on time or not?

It is of great importance.

~~That he can finish his task on time or not is of great importance.~~

句子成分完整的，但是句子有“是否”的意思---whether

Whether he can finish his task on time is of great importance.

翻译：他已经完成了那个任务，这是一个成功。

That he has finished the task is a success.

他能否完成任务还不知道。

Whether he can finish the task is unknown.

it is a success that he has finished the task.

it is unknown whether he can finished the task.

## 3. 疑问词引导主语从句

疑问词包括疑问代词 (who、whom、whose、what、what、whoever、whatever 等) 和疑问副词 (when、where、how、why、whenever 等)，what 也可表示“...的事、话、东西等”

疑问句引导无需添加连接词，只需要把从句变成陈述语序即可

例：

What did you say yesterday.---What you said yesterday

it was meaningful.

What you said yesterday was meaningful.

How will they solve the serious problem?

It has not been decided

-- How they will solve the serious problem has not been decided.

## • 宾语从句

1. 在句子中起宾语作用的从句称为宾语从句，其连接词的选择和用法与主语从句几乎一模一样。

例:

I think (that) you should turn to the teacher for help.

主谓宾:

n+v+n

Nobody knows if/whether he likes Lucy .

Do you know who has won the champion in the marathon this year?

you know+宾

从句: who has won the champion in the marathon this year

2. 动词 find、feel、think、consider、make、believe、guess、suppose、assume 等后有宾语补足语时，需要用 it 作为形式宾语，将 that 宾语从句后置。

例:

1) 主系表结构去 be 即可

I think+宾从

We take regular exercise every day is necessary.

---变成形式主语结构:

It is necessary that we take regular exercise every day.

---去 be

It necessary that we take regular exercise every day.

--形式宾语

I think it necessary that we take regular exercise every day.

I found him a nice boy. 主谓宾补 b

2) 不是主系表结构直接用 it 作形式宾语即可

例:

I hate it when they talk with their mouth full of food.

我讨厌他们满嘴食物说话。

### 3. 宾语从句注意事项

- 1) 宾语从句必须使用陈述语序
- 2) 宾语从句的时态

主句是一般现在时，从句可以是任何适当的时态，根据具体情况而定

例：

She says (that) she goes to work every day.

She says (that) she will sell her used books.

主句是一般过去时，从句则要用相应的时态，客观真理，科学事实除外

例：

He said that he was going to buy some new furniture.

He said that the earth travels around the sun.

She said her brother is five years older than her.

### 4. 宾语从句的否定转移

当主句的谓语动词是 think、believe、consider、imagine 等，且主句的主语是第一人称和一般现在时，从句的否定要转移到主句上来。

例：

I think it is not right to bad-mouth other people.

--- I don't think it is right to bad-mouth other people.

我认为....是不对的----我不认为...是对的

### 5. 宾语从句中 that 不能省略的情况

- 1) 主句谓语动词和 that 引导的宾语从句之间有插入语时

例：

I think, first of all, that we must believe in ourselves.

- 2) 宾语从句为主从复合句且从句位于主句之前时

例：

He said that if he came back early, he could come for the discussion.

- 3) 当 it 作为形式宾语，后接 that 引导的宾语从句时

例：

We have made it clear that our destination is to learn knowledge.

- 4) 宾语从句不止一个，则第一个可以省略，后面不可省略

例：

I think (that) it will clear up tomorrow and that the will go out for a picnic.

5) 当 when、who、what、why 等引导的从句和 that 引导的从句做主句谓语动词的并列宾语时

例:

I am sure where he lives and that he is living a happy life.

6) That 引导的宾语从句位于句首时

例:

That she didn't go home last night I simply don't believe.

### • 表语从句

在句子中作为表语的从句称为表语从句，引导表语从句的连接词主要有 that、whether、疑问词类、as /as if /as though 等

#### 1. that 类

例:

The reason for his absence is that his daughter suddenly fell ill.

他缺席的原因是因为他的女儿突然生病了。

#### 2. whether 类

例:

**The problem** is whether the new plan can be put into practice.

问题是新的计划能否实行。

#### 3. 疑问词类

例:

The problem is who we can get to go to the airport to pick her up.

问题是我们能找谁去机场接她。

#### 4. as /as if /as though 类

词类表语从句跟在特定动词后面，如 seem、appear、look、taste、sound、feel 等

例:

**It** sounds as if someone is knocking at the door.

听上去好像有人在敲门。

**He** looked just as he had looked ten years before.

他看起来还与十年前一样。

## · 同位语从句

同位语是解释说明某一名词内容的从句，所以总是跟在一个名词后面，且跟这个名词是同一个东西。

### 1. that 类

例：

The news that our women volleyball team had won the championship encouraged us all greatly.

我们女排赢得世界冠军的消息极大地鼓舞了我们所有人。

### 2. 特殊疑问词类

例：

The question who should replace her requires consideration.

谁该替代她，这个问题需要考虑。

We have not settled the question where we are going to spend our honeymoon.

我们还没决定到什么地方去度蜜月。

在名词性从句中，that 都不充当成分？对

在名词性从句中，都可以用 whether？不对

在名词性从句中，从句的功能等同于一个名词？对

## 名词从句的做题步骤

分析从句的句子结构，判断从句是否缺少句子成分——主要是看是否缺少主语或宾语。

缺主语或宾语，若从句缺少主语或宾语，一般选择 what(指事物)或 who(指人)作为连接词。

其他连词都不予考虑，原因是：(1)that/whether 在句中不作成分；(2)连接副词 when/where/why/how 在从句中

作状语，而不作主语或宾语。

值得注意的是，句子缺少主语时，我们很容易发现。但判断句子是否缺宾语，关键是要掌握从句中动词的用法，比如要知道动词是及物动词（须接宾语），还是不及物动词（无须接宾语）。比如：

he died is true.

he said is true.

die 是不及物动词，后面不能接宾语，而 say 是及物动词，后面一般需要接宾语。根据此用法特点，我们现在来分析上面两句话。在第一句中，动词 died 后面没有宾语，he died 是一个完整的句子，所以空格处所填词不作句子成分，因而填 that,说成：

That he died is true.

意思是“他死了这件事是真的。”

在第二句中，虽然 said 后面没有宾语，但是根据 say 的用法，

此处 said 后面应该接一个宾语，即 he said 不是一个完整的句子，空格处所填词作宾语，因而填 what,说成：

What he said is true.

意思是“他说的是真的。”我们再来分析下面这组句子：

he cheated you is true.

he told you is true.

cheat 的用法是 cheat sb.,只需接一个宾语,而 tell 的用法是 tell sb. sth.,一般需要接两个宾语。

根据此用法特点,我们现在来分析上面第两句话。在第一句中,动词 cheated 后面有宾语 you,he cheated you 是一个完整的句子,所以空格处所填词不作句子成分,因而填 that,说成:

That he cheated you is true.

意思是“他骗了你这件事是真的。”在第二句句中,虽然 told 后面也有宾语 you,但是根据 tell 的用法,此处 told 后面仍缺少宾语 sth.,即 he told you 不是一个完整的句子,空格处所填词作宾语,因而填 what,说成:

dWhat he told you is true.

意思是“他告诉你的是真的。”由此可见,掌握动词的用法是判断句子是否缺少宾语的关键。

不缺主语或宾语

此时,需要根据句子意思来选择连词。具体如下:

that

无词义

whether

“是否”

when

“什么时候”或“...的时候”

where

“在哪里”或“...的地方”

why

“为什么”或“...的原因”

how

“怎么样”或“...的方式”

关于 whose 和 which

whose 和 which 后面一般要接名词。

which 的意思是“哪一个”,用来限定名词,因此在选择 which 的时候,上下文语境中一般都会讲到多个事物,然后用 which 来限定是“哪一个事物”。

## 作业与练习

### 基础训练

1. —Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ the Capital Museum?  
— Next Friday.
- A. when will they visit                      B. when they will visit  
C. when did they visit                        D. when they visited

2. He wanted to know \_\_\_\_\_ the English party.  
A. when will we have                      B. when we will have  
C. when would we have                    D. when we should have
3. I want to know \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. when we should arrive at the airport  
B. when should we arrive at the airport  
C. when the airport we should arrive at  
D. when the airport should we arrive at
4. —David, look at the man in white over there. Can you tell me \_\_\_\_\_?  
—He is a doctor.  
A. Who is he                      B. who he is  
C. what is he                      D. what he is
5. I don't know when \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. will the train leave              B. the train will leave  
C. would the train leave              D. the train leave
6. Do you know what \_\_\_\_\_ with Jim?  
A. is wrong              B. wrong is              C. wrong was              D. the matter is
7. — I want to know \_\_\_\_\_.  
— Why not go to the park?  
A. where I can go for a picnic              B. where can I go for a picnic  
C. what I can go for a picnic              D. what can I go for a picnic
8. I don't think he is right, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. do I              B. isn't he              C. is he              D. don't I
9. The teacher didn't say you would come, \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. would you              B. wouldn't you              C. did she              D. didn't you
10. Do you know \_\_\_\_\_ daughter she is?  
A. whose              B. whom              C. what              D. who
11. They wondered if the teacher \_\_\_\_\_ them some English songs the next week.  
A. would teach              B. had taught  
C. will teach              D. taught
12. He asked me if I knew \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. whose pen was it              B. whose pen it was  
C. whose pen it is              D. whose pen is it

13. He told me \_\_\_\_\_ Paris is the capital of France.  
A. which    B. the    C. that    D. what
14. He asked me \_\_\_\_\_ during the summer holiday.  
A. where I had gone    B. where I had been  
C. where had I gone    D. where had I been
15. I'm not sure whether \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.  
A. they will arrive    B. will they arrive  
C. they arrive    D. they have arrived

### 提升训练

1. Do you see \_\_\_\_\_ I mean?  
A. that    B. /    C. how    D. what
2. Tell me \_\_\_\_\_ is on your mind.  
A. that    B. what    C. which    D. why
3. We must stick to \_\_\_\_\_ we have agreed on.  
A. what    B. that    C. /    D. how
4. Let me see \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. that can I repair the radio    B. whether -I can repair the radio  
C. I can repair the radio    D. whether can I repair the radio
5. Keep in mind \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. that the teacher said    B. what did the teacher say  
C. that did the teacher say    D. what the teacher said
6. Could you advise me \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. which book should I read first    B. what book should I read first  
C. that book 1 should read first    D. which book I should read first
7. He was criticized for \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. he had done it    B. what he had done    C. what had he done    D. that he had done it
8. Would you kindly tell me \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. how can I get to the Beijing Railway Station  
B. how I can get to the Beijing Railway Station  
C. where can I get to the Beijing Railway Station

D. whether can I get to the Beijing Railway Station

9. Mrs. Smith was very much impressed by \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. what had she seen in China      B. that she had seen in China  
C. what she had seen in China      D. which had she seen in China

10. We took it for granted \_\_\_\_

- A. that they were not coming      B. that were they not coming  
C. they were coming not      D. were they not coming

11. I really don't know \_\_\_\_\_

- A. I should do next      B. what should I do next  
C. what I should do next      D. how I should do next

12. I'm afraid \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. the little girl will have to be operated on  
B. that will the little girl have to operate on  
C. the little girl will have to operate on  
D. that will the little girl have to be operated on

13. She walked up to \_\_\_\_\_ .

- A. where did I stand      B. where I stood  
C. I stood there      D. where I stood there

14. Can you tell me \_\_\_\_\_?

- A. who is that gentleman      B. that gentleman is who  
C. who that gentleman is      D. whom .is that gentleman

15. We'll give you \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. that do you need      B. what do you need  
C. whatever you need      D. whether do you need

16. They want us to know \_\_\_\_\_ to help us.

- A. what can they      B. what they can      C. how they can      D. how can they

17. We must put \_\_\_\_\_ into practice.

- A. what we have learned      B. that we have learned  
C. that have we learned      D. what have we learned

18. Did she say anything about \_\_\_\_\_?

- A. that the work was to be done      B. how was the work to be done  
C. that was the work to be done      D. how the work was to be done

19. He was never satisfied with \_\_\_\_\_.

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

- A. what she had achieved                      B. had what she achieved  
C. she had achieved                            D. that she achieved
20. These photographs will show you \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. what does our village look like    B. what our village looks like  
C. how does our village look like    D. how our village looks like
21. Peter insisted \_\_\_\_\_ he pay the bill.  
A. on that                      B. what                      C. that                      D. on which
22. They urged \_\_\_\_\_ the library open during the vacation.  
A. when                      B. where                      C. why                      D. that
23. We wish we could have learned \_\_\_\_\_ when we were at high school.  
A. what you did                      B. that you had done  
C. that what you did                      D. what did you do
24. I will describe to you \_\_\_\_\_ I saw when there.  
A. what                      B. that                      C. which                      D. /
25. From \_\_\_\_\_ I should say he is a good worker.  
A. what I know of him                      B. that I do know of him  
C. what do I know of him                      D. that do I know of him
26. I will give this dictionary to \_\_\_\_\_ wants to have it.  
A. whomever                      B. anyone                      C. whoever                      D. someone
27. \_\_\_\_\_ they will come here hasn't been decided yet.  
A. What                      B. That                      C. When                      D. Where
28. \_\_\_\_\_ was said here must be kept secret.  
A. Who                      B. The thing                      C. Whatever                      D. Where
29. It is still a question \_\_\_\_\_ we shall have our sports meet.  
A. if                      B. that                      C. what                      D. when
30. I'm going anyway. \_\_\_\_\_ she will go is up to her to decide.  
A. If or not                      B. Whether or not                      C. If                      D. That
31. It is strange \_\_\_\_\_ she have left without saying a word.  
A. that                      B. what                      C. why                      D. how
32. It is very clear \_\_\_\_\_ our policy is a correct one.  
A. what                      B. that                      C. why                      D. where

33. \_\_\_\_\_ Mr Zhang said is quite right.  
A. That                      B. When                      C. What                      D. Whether
34. It has been decided \_\_\_\_\_ he will be sent there.  
A. if                              B. whether                      C. why                              D. that
35. It doesn't matter \_\_\_\_\_ he's come back or not.  
A. if                              B. whether                      C. that                              D. when
36. It's a great pity \_\_\_\_\_ we won't be able to finish the task on time.  
A. when                              B. that                              C. why                              D. where
37. It happened \_\_\_\_\_ I wasn't there that day.  
A. when                              B. why                              C. where                              D. that
38. \_\_\_\_\_ you have done might do harm to other people.  
A. What                              B. That                              C. Which                              D. The things
39. \_\_\_\_\_ leaves the room last ought to turn off the lights.  
A. Anyone                              B. The person                              C. Whoever                              D. Who
40. \_\_\_\_\_ the 2000 Olympic Games won't be held in Beijing is known to all.  
A. Whether                              B. If                              C. Whenever                              D. That
41. \_\_\_\_\_ fails to see this will make a big mistake.  
A. That                              B. Whoever                              C. Whether                              D. Whether or not
42. \_\_\_\_\_ we need more equipment is quite obvious.  
A. What                              B. Whether                              C. That                              D. Whatever
43. Has it been announced \_\_\_\_\_?  
A. when are the planes to take off                      B. that are the planes to take off  
C. where are the planes to take off                      D. when the planes are to take off
44. That is \_\_\_\_\_ we all support his idea.  
A. what                              B. why                              C. where                              D. when
45. That's \_\_\_\_\_ we should do.  
A. that                              B. what                              C. how                              D. why
46. \_\_\_\_\_ is troubling me is \_\_\_\_\_ I don't understand \_\_\_\_\_ he said  
A. What; that; what                              B. What; what; what  
C. That; that; what                              D. Why; that; which

47. Things were not \_\_\_\_\_ they seemed to be.  
A. when            B. why            C. that            D. what
48. That' s \_\_\_\_\_ I want to say.  
A. all what        B. what            C. all which        D. what that
49. That' s \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. where our differences lie            B. our differences lie there  
C. where do our differences lie        D. that where our differences lie
50. That is \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. where lived he there            B. where did he live  
C. where he lived                    D. that where he lived

## 答案与解析

### 基础练习

1. B. 句意：——你知道他们什么时候参观首都博物馆吗？——下周五。本题考查宾语从句。宾语从句应用陈述句语序，故排除 A、C 两项；又由答句可知应该用将来时，故排除 D 项。
2. D. 句意：他想知道我们什么时候举办英语联欢会。本题考查宾语从句的用法。当主句是一般过去时态的时候，宾语从句用相应的过去时态，而 A、B 两项都是一般将来时，故被排除；宾语从句用陈述句语序，而 C 项是疑问语序，也被排除。
3. A. 句意：我想知道我们应该什么时候到达机场。本题考查宾语从句。动词 know 后面接的是宾语从句，由宾语从句要用陈述语序可排除 B 和 D 两项；又因为 C 项中 the airport 的位置不对，故选 A。
4. D. 句意：——David，看那边那个穿白衣服的人，你能告诉我他是干什么的吗？——他是医生。本题考查宾语从句。由答句可知询问的是职业，所以用疑问词 what；又因为宾语从句要用陈述句语序，故选 D。
5. B. 本题是考查宾语从句的语序和时态的用法。特殊疑问词引导的宾语从句用陈述语序，主句是一般现在时，宾语从句根据说话人的意思可以判断是一般将来时。所以选择 B。
6. A. 本题是考查宾语从句的语序用法。特殊疑问词引导的宾语从句用陈述语序，what 在宾语从句作主语，所以 what is wrong 是陈述语序。同样如果 D 改成 is the matter 也是正确的。
7. A. 本题是考查宾语从句的语序用法，特殊疑问词 where 引导的宾语从句用陈述语序。从对话的答语可以判断特殊疑问词 where 引导宾语从句。
8. C. 本题是考查反意疑问句的用法。主句是 I think 和后面的宾语从句构成复合句，其反意疑问句的主语、谓语和宾语从句保持一致，前面的句子是否定句，所以附加疑问句用肯定形式。
9. C. 本题是考查反意疑问句的用法。复合句的反意疑问句的主语、谓语和主句保持一致，这里主句是 The teacher didn't say，而且是否定句，所以附加疑问句用肯定形式。
10. A. 句意为“你知道她是谁的女儿吗？”可知应该用 whose。

11. A. 从句的时态原本应该用一般将来时（因为时间状语是 **next week**），但是由于主句的时态是一般过去时，因此从句的时态应该改为过去将来时，即 **would + 动词原形**。
12. B. 首先通过从句应该是陈述句语序这一点来排除 **A** 和 **D**，然后由于主句的时态是过去时，因此从句也要用过去的时态，故选 **B**。
13. C. 本题考查宾语从句的引导词 **that**，可以省略，在从句中不作任何成分。
14. B. 首先，从句应该用陈述句语序，因此只能考虑 **A** 或 **B**。然后根据题目的意思，他问我去了哪里，证明我已经回来的，问的是曾经去了哪里，因此用 **been to**。
15. A. 该题中的 **A, C, D** 都是陈述句语序，都可以考虑；但是只有 **A** 符合从句时态的要求，故选 **A**。

### 提升训练

1. D. what

解析：句子缺少宾语从句的引导词，且从句缺少宾语，用 **what**。

2. B. what

解析：从句缺少主语，用 **what** 引导宾语从句。

3. A. what

解析：**stick to** 后接宾语从句，且从句缺少宾语，用 **what**。

4. B. whether I can repair the radio

解析：**see** 后接宾语从句，**whether** 引导从句，语序为陈述句语序。

5. D. what the teacher said

解析：**mind** 后接宾语从句，**what** 作 **said** 的宾语。

6. D. which book I should read first

解析：**advise** 后接宾语从句，**which** 修饰 **book**，语序为陈述句语序。

7. B. what he had done

解析：**for** 后接宾语从句，**what** 作 **had done** 的宾语。

8. B. how I can get to the Beijing Railway Station

解析：**tell me** 后接宾语从句，**how** 引导从句，语序为陈述句语序。

9. C. what she had seen in China

解析：**by** 后接宾语从句，**what** 作 **had seen** 的宾语。

10. A. that they were not coming

解析：**took it for granted** 后接 **that** 引导的宾语从句。

11. C. what I should do next

解析：**know** 后接宾语从句，**what** 作 **should do** 的宾语。

12. A. the little girl will have to be operated on

解析：**afraid** 后接省略 **that** 的宾语从句，语序为陈述句语序。

13. B. where I stood

解析：**up to** 后接宾语从句，**where** 引导从句，语序为陈述句语序。

14. C. who that gentleman is

解析：**tell me** 后接宾语从句，**who** 作表语，语序为陈述句语序。

15. C. whatever you need

解析：**give** 后接宾语从句，**whatever** 引导从句，表示“无论什么”。

16. B. what they can

解析：know 后接宾语从句，what 作 can help 的宾语。

17. A. what we have learned

解析：put 后接宾语从句，what 作 have learned 的宾语。

18. D. how the work was to be done

解析：about 后接宾语从句，how 引导从句，语序为陈述句语序。

19. A. what she had achieved

解析：with 后接宾语从句，what 作 had achieved 的宾语。

20. B. what our village looks like

解析：show 后接宾语从句，what 作 looks like 的宾语。

21. C. that

解析：insisted 后接 that 引导的宾语从句。

22. D. that

解析：urged 后接 that 引导的宾语从句，表示“主张”。

23. A. what you did

解析：learned 后接宾语从句，what 作 did 的宾语。

24. A. what

解析：describe 后接宾语从句，what 作 saw 的宾语。

25. A. what I know of him

解析：from 后接宾语从句，what 作 know 的宾语。

26. C. whoever

解析：to 后接宾语从句，whoever 引导从句，作主语。

27. C. When

解析：主语从句，when 引导从句，表示时间。

28. C. Whatever

解析：主语从句，whatever 引导从句，表示“无论什么”。

29. D. when

解析：question 后接同位语从句，when 引导从句。

30. B. Whether or not

解析：主语从句，whether 引导从句，表示“是否”。

31. A. that

解析：it 作形式主语，that 引导主语从句。

32. B. that

解析：it 作形式主语，that 引导主语从句。

33. C. What

解析：主语从句，what 引导从句，作 said 的宾语。

34. D. that

解析：it 作形式主语，that 引导主语从句。

35. B. whether

解析：it 作形式主语，whether 引导主语从句，表示“是否”。

36. B. that

解析：it 作形式主语，that 引导主语从句。

37. D. that

解析：it 作形式主语，that 引导主语从句。

38. A. What

解析：主语从句，what 引导从句，作 done 的宾语。

39. C. Whoever

解析：主语从句，whoever 引导从句，表示“无论谁”。

40. D. That

解析：主语从句，that 引导从句。

41. B. Whoever

解析：主语从句，whoever 引导从句，表示“无论谁”。

42. C. That

解析：主语从句，that 引导从句。

43. D. when the planes are to take off

解析：announced 后接宾语从句，when 引导从句，语序为陈述句语序。

44. B. why

解析：表语从句，why 引导从句，表示原因。

45. B. what

解析：表语从句，what 引导从句，作 should do 的宾语。

46. A. What; that; what

解析：第一空为主语从句，what 作主语；第二空为表语从句，that 无实义；第三空为宾语从句，what 作 said 的宾语。

47. D. what

解析：表语从句，what 引导从句，作 seemed 的表语。

48. B. what

解析：表语从句，what 引导从句，作 want 的宾语。

49. A. where our differences lie

解析：表语从句，where 引导从句，表示地点。

50. C. where he lived

解析：表语从句，where 引导从句，表示地点。

## 十二课：定语从句

定语从句=“adj”

Q1? 定语从句会不会影响主句句子结构完整性?

主+谓+宾 (定从)

定从去掉，主句基本结构是完整的

1. 什么是定语：用于修饰或限定名词或代词的成分

定语？用于限定或修饰名词或代词的成分叫定语

She is a girl. 主+系+表

She is a beautiful girl. 定语：形容词

There is a shoe factory 定语：名词

There is a cup of coffee. 定语：短语

He is the man who helped me a lot 定语：句子

2. 定语从句的构成：主句（先行词）+关系词+从句

主句（先行词）+关系词+从句

定语从句=adj? -----修饰某个成分

先行词：被修饰的那个词

关系词：用于连接主句和从句的一个词，有三个作用

She is a girl.

The girl is beautiful.

1. She is a girl+关系词+the girl is beautiful.

2. She is a girl who the girl is beautiful.

3. She is a girl who ~~the girl~~ is beautiful.=She is a girl who is beautiful.

关系词的功能：

A. 引导定语从句；

B. 代替先行词；

C. 在定语从句中担当一个成分。

关系代词：主宾---

关系副词：状---

Q2: 什么时候需要关系代词，什么时候需要关系副词？

成分缺不缺？

关系代词：

1. that

先行词：人或物，从句成分：主语或宾语

The number of people **that** come to visit this city each year **reaches** one million.

The number of.... ....的数量（单数）

A number of.... 许多 (复数)

The number of people **reaches** one million.  
**people come** to visit this city each year.

先行词: people

从句成分: 主语

关系词----that

The number of people **reaches** one million.  
**that come** to visit this city each year=adj.

The number of people that come to visit this city each year **reaches** one million.

还原:

The number of people **reaches** one million.

The people **come** to visit this city each year

翻译: 我永远不会忘了那个伤害过我的女孩

I will never forget the girl

The girl hurt me deeply.

I will never forget the girl that hurt me deeply.

that-人/物--主/宾

3. which ---物---主/宾

先行词: 物, 从句成分: 主语或宾语

**The factory** which makes computers **is far away from here.**

**The film** which they went to see last night **was not interesting at all.**

翻译: 我一直都记得那条咬了我的狗

I can still remember the dog.

The dog bit me.

I can still remember the dog which bit me.

3.who --人--主/宾

先行词: 人, 从句成分: 主语,宾语

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

The boys who are playing football are from Class One.

翻译：我最喜欢的明星打篮球打的很好

---

My favorite star plays basketball very well  
My favourite star who play basketball well is CXK.  
the star can play basketball well who is my favorite.

定从：必须有主句

#### 4. whom

先行词：人，从句成分：宾语 prep+whom

Mr Li is the person whom/who you talked about ( ) on the bus.

Mr Li is the person about whom you talked on the bus.

翻译：那个漂亮的女孩就是你曾经不喜欢的前任

---

The pretty girl is the ex girlfriend \_\_\_who/whom\_\_\_ you didn't like .

#### 5. whose

先行词：人或物，从句成分：定语。

I visited a scientist

the scientist's name is known all over the country.

I visited a scientist whose name is known all over the country.

I once lived in the house

the house's roof has fallen in.

I once lived in the house whose roof has fallen in.

the house's roof====whose

the roof of the house=====of which

I once lived in the house whose roof has fallen in.

#### 6. AS (固定搭配)

先行词: 人或物, 从句成分: 主语或宾语

such+名词+ as

such (pron.)+ as

the same +名词 + as

as....as

He is such a person as is respected by all of us

He is a person who/that is respected by all of us.

This is the same pen as I lost yesterday.

This book is not such as I expect.

As is expected, he has been absent.= he has been absent, which is expected, he has been absent.

**that** 人/物---主/宾

**who** 人---主/宾

**whom** 人---宾

**which** 物---主/宾

**whose** 人/物---定

**as** 人/物--主/宾

关系副词

**When**

先行词: 时间, 从句成分: 时间状语

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

I will never forget the day when we met there.

I will never forget the day

We met there on the day

I will never forget **the day** **when** we met there

on the day prep+n= 状 prep+关系词

I will never forget **the day** on which we met there

I will never forget **the moment** at which we met there

on which=when

**about** whom

**介词+which/介词+whom**

牛刀小试:

I will never forget the day \_\_\_\_\_ we met there.

I will never forget the day \_\_\_\_\_ we **spent** together.

A. which B. when C. as D. why

I still remember the day when I first came to this school.

The time when we got together finally arrived.

I will never forget the day when/on which we met there.

We met there on the day=====on which

Where

先行词: 地点, 从句成分: 地点状语

This is the house where I was born.

I visited the farm where a lot of cows were raised .

Is this the place where they fought the enemy?

why

先行词: 原因, 从句成分: 原因状语

Please tell me the reason why you missed the plane.

**Please tell me the reason**

you missed the plane for the reason

The reason why he was punished is unknown to us.  
I don't know the reason why he looks unhappy today.  
关系副词 =“介词+关系代词”引导的定语从句来表示  
when = 表时间的介词 (in, at, on, during 等) + which  
where = 表地点的介词 (in, at, on, under 等) + which  
why = 表原因的介词 (for) + which

注意:

**That 前绝不能有介词**

“介词+关系代词”前还可有 some, any, none, all, both, neither, many, most, each, few 等代词或者数词。

He loves his parents deeply, both of whom are very kind to him. (√)

He loves his parents deeply, both of them are very kind to him. (×)

He loves his parents deeply **and** both of them are very kind to him.

### 限制性定语从句和非限制性定语从句

限制性定语从句形式上不用逗号“，”与主句隔开。

意义上是先行词不可缺少的定语，如删除，主句则失去意义或意思表达不完整。

The teacher told me that Tom was the only person ~~that I could depend on.~~

In the street I saw a man who was from Africa.

非限制性定语从句用逗号与主句隔开。只是对先行词的补充说明，如删除，主句仍能表达完整的意思。通常译成主句的并列句。

His mother, who loves him very much, is strict with him.

China, which was founded in 1949, is becoming more and more powerful.

注意区分下列几组句子的不同含义（了解即可）：

*Her brother who is now a soldier always encourages her to go to college.*

*她那当兵的哥哥总是鼓励她上大学。（意含：她还有其他哥哥。）*

*Her brother, who is now a soldier, always encourages her to go to college.*

*她哥哥是当兵的，他总是鼓励她上大学。（意含：她只有一个哥哥。）*

*All the books that have pictures in them are well written.*

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

所有里面带插图的书都写得很好。（意含：不带插图的书则不一定写得好。）

All the books, which have pictures in them, are well written.

所有的书都带插图，这些书都写得很好。（意含：没有不带插图的书。）

### 限制性定语从句中只能用 **that** 引导定语从句的情况

(1)先行词为 every-/any-/some-/no-(thing/body)等不定复合代词时。

we should do something **that** is useful to people.

(2) 先行词被 all, every, no, some, any, little, much 等修饰时。

You can take any seat **that** is free.

(3)先行词被序数词或最高级修饰时。

The best/first **that** I could do was to apologize.

(4)先行词既有人也有物的时候。

The people and the buildings **that** comes to my mind is No1 middle school.

(5)当主句是以 who, which, what 开头的特殊疑问句时。

Which is the bike **that** you lost?

Who is the boy **that** won the gold media?

(6)先行词被 the only, the very, the last 修饰时。

This is the very book **that** I'm looking for.

After the fire in his house, the old car is the only thing **that** he owns.

### 只用 **which** 引导的定语从句

(1) 引导非限制性定语从句

(2) 代表整个句子的意思

He had failed in the math exam, which made his father very angry.

(3) 介词+关系代词 (whom 指代人)

This is the room in which my father lived last year.

This is the room \_\_\_\_\_my father lived in last year.

(4) 先行词后面有插入语时，只用 which，不用 that。

Here is the English grammar book which, as I've told you, will help you improve your English.

Here is the English grammar book which/that will help you improve your English.

关系代词 as 和 which 引导的定语从句（了解）

as 和 which 引导非限制性定语从句时，相同之处：（非限制性定语）

1. 都可以在定语从句中做主语或宾语，代表前面整个句子。

He married her, as / which was natural.

He is honest, as / which we can see.

不同点：

(1) 位置

as 引导的非限制性定语从句可以放在主句之前、主句之后，甚至还可以分割主句。另外，

as 常常有“正如、正像”的含义。

which 引导的非限制性定语从句只可放在主句之后。

As is known to all, China is a developing country.

He is from the south, as we can know from his accent.

John, as you know, is a famous writer.

Zhang Hua has been to Paris more than ten times, which I don't believe.

(2) 当主句和从句之间存在着逻辑上的因果关系时，关系词往往只用 which。如：

Tom was late for school again and again, which made his teacher very angry.

(3) 先行词作主语且定语从句为被动语态时，用 as，如：be known, be said, be reported, be announced, be mentioned 等

She has been absent again, as is expected.

(4) 当先行词受 such, the same 等修饰时，关系词常用 as。

I've never heard such stories as he tells.

## 定语从句与同位语从句的区别

同位语：

Tom, head of the group, is talking with a stranger.

区别一：

定语从句修饰限定先行词，它与先行词是修饰关系；

同位语从句说明先行词的具体内容，它与先行词是同位关系（指同一事物）。

The fact that he has already died is quite clear. (同)

The fact that he told me is quite clear. (定)

The plane that has just taken off is for Paris. (定)

区别二：

定语从句关系词在从句中担当相应的句子成分，有时可省

同位语从句主要由连词 that 引导，在从句中一般不担当成分；

有时也由 where, when, how, who, whether, what 等连词引导，这些连词则在从句中担当成分。

The news that he told me is true. (定)

The news that he has just died is true. (同)

The problem that we are facing now is how we can collect so much money. (定)

The problem how we can collect so much money is difficult to solve. (同)

## 特殊结构的定语从句

1. 在先行词与定语从句之间插入一个状语

例：

There are many thousands of stars in the sky that are like the sun.

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

2. 在先行词与定语从句之间插入一个定语

例:

Do you remember one day **ten years ago** when I came to your house?

3. 先行词和定语从句被谓语分隔开来

例:

A new teacher **will come tomorrow** who will teach you how to use the new book.

4. 多重定语从句

例:

Tibet is a place **where the Tibetan people have been living for generations** and **which** all the people across the world are dreaming of visiting.

**定语从句的主谓一致**

定语从句的动词在人称和数方面应该与它的先行词保持一致。

例:

I am not **the one** who is afraid of difficult.

Please choose me, who \_\_\_ qualified for this job.

I \_\_\_ am \_\_\_ qualified for this job.

### 作业与练习

把下列每对句子合并成含有定语从句的主从复合句:

1. The fan is on the desk. You want it.

2. The man is in the next room. He brought our textbooks here yesterday.

3. The magazine is mine. He has taken it away.

4. The students will not pass the exam . They don' t study hard.

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

5. The woman is our geography teacher. You saw her in the park.
  6. The letter is from my sister. I received it yesterday.
  7. The play was wonderful. We saw it last night.
  8. The train was late. It was going to Nanning.
  9. The boy is my brother. He was here a minute ago.
  10. The tree is quite tall. He is climbing it.
  11. Here is the girl. Her brother works in this shop.
  12. That's the child. We were looking at his drawing just now.
  13. This is the boy. His sister is a famous singer.
  14. I want to talk to the boys. Their homework haven't been handed in.
  15. Is that the woman? Her daughter is in my class.
  16. He used to live in a big house. In front of it grew many banana trees.
  17. They passed a factory. At the back of the factory there were rice fields.
  18. The soldier ran to the building. On the top of it flew a flag.
  19. In the evening they arrived at a hill. At the foot of the hill there was a temple.
  20. She came into a big room. In the middle of it stood a large table.
- 
1. The man \_\_\_\_ visited our school yesterday is from London.  
A. who            B. which            C. whom            D. when
  2. The woman \_\_\_\_ is talking to my mother is a friend of hers.  
A. whose            B. who            C. whom            D. which
  3. Because of my poor memory, all \_\_\_\_ you told me has been forgotten.  
A. that            B. which            C. what            D. as
  4. Do you remember those days \_\_\_\_ we spent along the seashore very happily?  
A. when            B. where            C. which            D. who
  5. Tom did not take away the camera because it was just the same camera \_\_\_\_ he lost last week.

- A. which      B. that      C. whom      D. as
6. Those \_\_\_\_ want to go please sign their names here.  
A. whom      B. which      C. who      D. when
7. Where is the man \_\_\_\_ I met this morning?  
A. when      B. where      C. which      D. who
8. Who is the woman \_\_\_\_ is sweeping the floor over there?  
A. who      B. /      C. that      D. when
9. The man \_\_\_\_ you talked just now is a worker.  
A. who      B. whom      C. to whom      D. to who
10. The man \_\_\_\_ you are going to make friends is my father' s neighbour.  
A. with whom      B. when      C. to whom      D. which
11. The doctor \_\_\_\_ is leaving for Africa next month.  
A. the nurse is talking to him      B. whom the nurse is talking  
C. the nurse is talking to      D. who the nurse is talking
12. The man \_\_\_\_ around our school is from America.  
A. which you showed      B. you showed him      C. you showed      D.  
where you showed
13. He talked about a hero \_\_\_\_ no one had ever heard.  
A. of whom      B. from whom      C. about that      D. who
14. In fact the Swede did not understand the three questions \_\_\_\_ were asked in French.  
A. where      B. who      C. in which      D. which
15. Have you read the book \_\_\_\_ I lent to you?  
A. that      B. whom      C. when      D. whose
16. Finally, the thief handed over everything \_\_\_\_ he had stolen to the police.  
A. that      B. which      C. whatever      D. all
17. The foreign guests, \_\_\_\_ were government officials, were warmly welcomed at the airport.  
A. most of them      B. most of that      C. most of whom      D. most of those
18. This is the very letter \_\_\_\_ came last night.  
A. who      B. which      C. that      D. as
19. I know only a little about this matter; you may ask \_\_\_\_ knows better than I.  
A. whoever      B. whomever      C. anyone      D. the one
20. This is the school \_\_\_\_ we visited three days ago.  
A. where      B. /      C. when      D. what
21. This is the factory \_\_\_\_ we worked a year ago.  
A. where      B. that      C. which      D. on which
22. Nearby were two canoes \_\_\_\_ they had come to the island.  
A. which      B. in which      C. that      D. /
23. Jack is pleased with \_\_\_\_ you have given him and all \_\_\_\_ you have told him.  
A. that, what      B. what, that      C. which, what      D. that, which
24. Do you work near the building \_\_\_\_ colour is yellow?  
A. that      B. which      C. its      D. whose
25. In the dark street, there wasn' t a single person \_\_\_\_ she could turn for help.

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

- A. whom      B. who      C. to whom      D. form whom
26. Is this school \_\_\_\_ we visited three years ago?  
A. the one      B. which      C. that      D. where
27. Is this the school \_\_\_\_ we visited three years ago?  
A. the one      B. where      C. in which      D. /
28. How many students are there in your class \_\_\_\_ homes are in the country?  
A. whose      B. who      C. whom      D. which
29. Alice received an invitation from her boss, \_\_\_\_ came as a surprise.  
A. it      B. which      C. that      D. he
30. The train was crowded and I had to get into a carriage \_\_\_\_ already seven other people.  
A. when there were      B. which there were      C. that there were      D. where there were
31. I live in the house \_\_\_\_ windows face south.  
A. which      B. whose      C. where      D. in that
32. ---- What game is popular with them? ---- The \_\_\_\_ most is tennis.  
A. game they like it      B. game they like      C. best game they like      D. best game they like it
33. They stayed with me three weeks, \_\_\_\_ they drank all the wine I had.  
A. which      B. which time      C. during which time      D. during which
34. The room \_\_\_\_ Mr White lives is not very large.  
A. that      B. which      C. where      D. when
35. Don' t forget the day \_\_\_\_ you were received into the Youth League.  
A. when      B. that      C. at which      D. where
36. I' ve finished writing the novel, \_\_\_\_ is to be published next month.  
A. that      B. what      C. which      D. when
37. He returned home safe and sound after a fierce battle, \_\_\_\_ was unexpected.  
A. which      B. as      C. that      D. it
38. \_\_\_\_ we is known to all, English is not very difficult to learn.  
A. What      B. As      C. That      D. Which
39. The old man had three sons, all of \_\_\_\_ died during World War II .  
A. whose      B. that      C. whom      D. who
40. I have bought two pens, \_\_\_\_ write well.  
A. none of which      B. neither of which      C. both of which      D. all of which
41. Do you know the reason \_\_\_\_ she has changed her mind?  
A. why      B. which      C. for that      D. of which
42. He failed in the exam, \_\_\_\_ proves that he wasn' t working hard enough.  
A. which      B. what      C. it      D. that
43. During the week \_\_\_\_ he tried to collect materials for his article.  
A. following      B. followed      C. to follow      D. that followed

44. \_\_\_\_ was expected, he succeeded in the exam.  
A. It                      B. Which                      C. As                      D. That
45. He studied hard and later became a well-known writer, \_\_\_\_ his father expected.  
A. that was what    B. what was that    C. and which was    D. which was what
46. We should read such books \_\_\_\_ will make us better and wiser.  
A. when                      B. as                      C. whose                      D. what
47. You must show my wife the same respect \_\_\_\_ you show me.  
A. when                      B. as                      C. whose                      D. what
48. He is absent \_\_\_\_ is often the case.  
A. what                      B. which                      C. who                      D. as
49. It is the first time \_\_\_\_ I have come to your city.  
A. that                      B. which                      C. what                      D. when
50. Who \_\_\_\_ has the same idea as it will do it in this way.  
A. who                      B. that                      C. whom                      D. which

### 答案与解析

1. The fan that you want is on the desk.
2. The man who brought our textbooks here yesterday is in next room.
3. The magazine which he has taken away is mine.
4. The students who don't study hard will not pass the exam.
5. The woman you saw in the park is our geography teacher.
6. The letter I received yesterday is from my sister.
7. The play that we saw last night was wonderful.
8. The train which was going to Nanning was late.
9. The boy who was here a minute ago is my brother.
10. The tree he is climbing is quite tall.
11. Here is the girl whose brother works in this shop.
12. That's the child whose drawing we were looking at just now.
13. This is the boy whose sister is a famous singer.
14. I want to talk to the boy whose homework hasn't been handed in.
15. Is that the woman whose daughter is in my class?
16. He used to live in a big house, in front of which grew many banana trees.
17. They passed a factory, at the back of which there were rice fields.
18. The soldier ran to the building, on the top of which flew a flag.
19. In the evening they arrived at a hill, at the foot of which there was a temple.
20. She came into a big room, in the middle of which stood a large table.

1. A. who

解析：先行词是“the man”（人），定语从句缺少主语，用“who”。

翻译：昨天参观我们学校的那个人来自伦敦。

2. B. who

解析：先行词是“the woman”（人），从句缺少主语，用“who”。

翻译：正在和我妈妈说话的那个女人是她的朋友。

3. A. that

解析：先行词是“all”（不定代词），关系代词只能用“that”。

翻译：由于我的记忆力差，你告诉我的一切我都忘了。

4. C. which

解析：先行词是“those days”（时间），但定语从句中“spent”是及物动词，缺少宾语，用“which”。

翻译：你还记得我们在海边快乐度过的那些日子吗？

5. D. as

解析：固定搭配“the same...as...”（和.....一样）。

翻译：汤姆没有拿走相机，因为它和他上周丢的那台一模一样。

6. C. who

解析：先行词是“those”（人），从句缺少主语，用“who”。

翻译：想去的人请在这里签名。

7. D. who

解析：先行词是“the man”（人），从句缺少宾语（I met the man），可用“who/whom/that”或省略。

翻译：我今天早上遇到的那个人在哪里？

8. C. that

解析：先行词是“the woman”（人），但前面有“who”提问，为避免重复，用“that”。

翻译：那边正在扫地的那位女士是谁？

9. C. to whom

解析：“talk to sb.”是固定搭配，先行词是“the man”，用“to whom”。

翻译：你刚才和他谈话的那个人是个工人。

10. A. with whom

解析：“make friends with sb.”是固定搭配，先行词是“the man”，用“with whom”。

翻译：你要交朋友的那个人是我父亲的邻居。

11. C. the nurse is talking to

解析：定语从句修饰“the doctor”，完整句子是“the nurse is talking to the doctor”，可省略关系代词。

翻译：护士正在和他说话的那位医生下个月要去非洲。

12. C. you showed

解析：先行词是“the man”，从句“you showed (the man) around our school”省略了关系代词。

翻译：你带他参观我们学校的那个人来自美国。

13. A. of whom

解析：固定搭配“hear of sb.”（听说过某人），先行词是“a hero”，用“of whom”。

翻译：他谈论了一个没人听说过的英雄。

14. D. which

解析：先行词是“the three questions”（物），从句缺少主语，用“which”。

翻译：事实上，这个瑞典人不懂用法语问的那三个问题。

15. A. that

解析：先行词是“the book”（物），从句“I lent to you”缺少宾语，可用“that/which”或省略。

翻译：你读了我借给你的那本书吗？

16. A. that

解析：先行词是“everything”（不定代词），关系代词只能用“that”。

翻译：最终，小偷把他偷的所有东西都交给了警察。

17. C. most of whom

解析：非限制性定语从句，先行词是“the foreign guests”（人），用“most of whom”。

翻译：这些外国客人大多是政府官员，他们在机场受到了热烈欢迎。

18. C. that

解析：先行词被“the very”修饰，关系代词只能用“that”。

翻译：这就是昨晚来的那封信。

19. A. whoever

解析：从句“\_\_\_\_ knows better than I”缺少主语，用“whoever”（无论谁）。

翻译：我对这件事知之甚少，你可以问比我更了解的人。

20. B. /

解析：先行词是“the school”，从句“we visited”缺少宾语，可省略关系代词。

翻译：这就是我们三天前参观的那所学校。

21. A. where

解析：先行词是“the factory”，从句“we worked”缺少地点状语，用“where”。

翻译：这就是我们一年前工作的那家工厂。

22. B. in which

解析：先行词是“two canoes”，从句“they had come to the island in the canoes”，用“in which”。

翻译：附近有两条他们乘船来到岛上的独木舟。

23. B. what, that

解析：第一空“what”引导宾语从句；第二空“that”引导定语从句修饰“all”。

翻译：杰克对你给他的东西和你告诉他的一切感到满意。

24. D. whose

解析：先行词是“the building”，从句“\_\_\_\_ colour is yellow”缺少定语，用“whose”。

翻译：你工作的地方附近那栋黄色的建筑是什么？

25. C. to whom

解析：固定搭配“turn to sb. for help”（向某人求助），用“to whom”。

翻译：在黑暗的道路上，她找不到一个可以求助的人。

26. A. the one

解析：句子主干是“Is this school the one...?”，定语从句修饰“the one”。

翻译：这就是我们三年前参观的那所学校吗？

27. D. /

解析：先行词是“the school”，从句“we visited”缺少宾语，可省略关系代词。

翻译：这是我们三年前参观的那所学校吗？

28. A. whose

解析：先行词是“students”，从句“\_\_\_\_ homes are in the country”缺少定语，用“whose”。

翻译：你们班有多少学生的家在乡下？

29. B. which

解析：非限制性定语从句，指代整个主句，用“which”。

翻译：爱丽丝收到了老板的邀请，这让她很惊讶。

30. D. where there were

解析：先行词是“a carriage”（地点），从句缺少地点状语，用“where”。

翻译：火车很拥挤，我不得不进入一个已经有七个人的车厢。

31. B. whose

解析：先行词是“the house”，从句“\_\_\_ windows face south”缺少定语，用“whose”。

翻译：我住在窗户朝南的那栋房子里。

32. B. game they like

解析：句子主干是“The game they like most is tennis.”，定语从句修饰“game”。

翻译：——他们最喜欢什么游戏？——他们最喜欢的是网球。

33. C. during which time

解析：非限制性定语从句，表示“在那三周期间”，用“during which time”。

翻译：他们和我住了三周，期间喝光了我所有的酒。

34. C. where

解析：先行词是“the room”，从句“Mr White lives”缺少地点状语，用“where”。

翻译：怀特先生住的房间不大。

35. A. when

解析：先行词是“the day”，从句“you were received”缺少时间状语，用“when”。

翻译：别忘了你被接收进共青团的那一天。

36. C. which

解析：非限制性定语从句，指代“the novel”，用“which”。

翻译：我已经写完那本小说，它将于下个月出版。

37. A. which

解析：非限制性定语从句，指代整个主句，用“which”。

翻译：他在一场激烈的战斗后安然无恙地回家了，这是出乎意料的。

38. B. As

解析：固定搭配“as we know”（众所周知），用“as”引导非限制性定语从句。

翻译：众所周知，英语并不难学。

39. C. whom

解析：非限制性定语从句，先行词是“three sons”，用“all of whom”。

翻译：那位老人有三个儿子，都在二战期间去世了。

40. C. both of which

解析：非限制性定语从句，指代“two pens”，用“both of which”。

翻译：我买了两支笔，它们都很好写。

41. A. why

解析：先行词是“the reason”，从句“she has changed her mind”缺少原因状语，用“why”。

翻译：你知道她改变主意的原因吗？

42. A. which

解析：非限制性定语从句，指代整个主句，用“which”。

翻译：他考试不及格，这证明他不够努力。

43. D. that followed

解析：先行词是“the week”，从句“\_\_\_ he tried...”缺少主语，用“that followed”（接下来的那一周）。

翻译：在接下来的一周里，他试图为他的文章收集材料。

44. C. As

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

解析：固定搭配“as was expected”（正如预料的那样），用“as”引导非限制性定语从句。

翻译：正如预料的那样，他考试成功了。

45. D. which was what

解析：非限制性定语从句，指代整个主句，“which was what his father expected”表示“这正是他父亲期望的”。

翻译：他努力学习，后来成为了一位著名作家，这正是他父亲期望的。

46. B. as

解析：固定搭配“such...as...”（像.....这样的），用“as”引导定语从句。

翻译：我们应该读那些能让我们变得更好、更聪明的书。

47. B. as

解析：固定搭配“the same...as...”（和.....一样），用“as”引导定语从句。

翻译：你必须对我妻子表现出和我一样的尊重。

48. D. as

解析：固定搭配“as is often the case”（情况常常如此），用“as”引导非限制性定语从句。

翻译：他缺席了，这是常有的事。

49. A. that

解析：固定句型“It is the first time that...”（这是第一次.....），用“that”。

翻译：这是我第一次来你的城市。

50. B. that

解析：先行词是“who”（指人），为避免重复，关系代词用“that”。

翻译：任何有同样想法的人都会这样做。

## 十三课：状语从句

就其本质来说，状语从句是表达句间逻辑语义关系的一种方式。状语从句就是用恰当的从属连词将两个或多个完整独立的句子连接起来，以表达各句之间所具有的逻辑语义关系。比如下面两个简单句：

a. We went swimming.(我们去游泳了。)

b. It was hot.(天气很热。)

常识告诉我们：因为天气热，所以我们去游泳了。也就是说，b句表达的是原因，a句表达的是结果，两句话之间存在因果关系。于是我们可以用表达原因的从属连词，比如 **because**，把这两个简单句连接成主从复合句：

c. We went swimming because it was hot.(因为天气很热，所以我们去游泳了。)

顺便提及的是，连词后面的句子就是从句。所以 **we went swimming** 是主句，**because it was hot** 是从句，确切来说，是原因状语从句。

为什么叫原因状语从句？

首先，动词的修饰语被称作状语。

其次，从句 **because it was hot** 修饰主句谓语内容 **went swimming**，即该从句是充当状语的，因而被称作状语从句。最后，因为这个状语从句是表示原因的，说明“去游泳”的原因，所以，该从句进一步被称作原因状语从句。

其他状语从句同理类推。当然，状语从句不一定都修饰动词，还可以修饰其他对象  
下面我们再来看这组简单句：

- a. **We went swimming.**(我们去游泳了。)
- b. **It was cold.**(天气很冷。)

常识告诉我们：天气很冷，人们一般不会去游泳。所以，这里的 a、b 两句话不存在正常的因果关系，比如我们就不能说：

**We went swimming because it was cold.** \* (我们去游泳了，因为天气很冷。)

这个句子的语法结构没有错误，但逻辑语义有问题，不符合常理，让人觉得很奇怪。由此可见，句间的逻辑语义关系可以根据生活经验来判断。

生活经验告诉我们，上面两句话正常的逻辑关系应该是：由于天气冷，所以没去游泳。用英文可以说成：

c. **We didn't go swimming because it was cold.**

注意，c 句把主句谓语 **went swimming** 否定了，说成 **didn't go swimming**。也就是说，由 b 句的原因推导出 a 句结果的反面——没去游泳(**didn't go swimming**)，我们把 a、b 两句间的这种逻辑关系称作反向的因果关系。英文中有一个专门的语法术语来标记这种逻辑关系，叫作“让步关系”，这样的状语从句叫作“让步状语从句”。让步状语从句常用连词 **although** 或 **though** 引导，意为“尽管”，于是上面 a、b 两句话可以这样连接：

d. **We went swimming although it was cold.**(尽管天气很冷，但我们还是去游泳了。)

从以上讨论，我们看到，两个简单句之间，先有了逻辑语义关系，然后再使用能表达这种逻辑语义关系的从属连词把二者连接起来。从属连词的使用，只不过是进一步标明了句间早已存在的逻辑语义关系。也就是说，逻辑语义决定了从属连词的使用。下面我们就分别介绍一下逻辑语义的分

类及其对应的从属连词。

一般来讲，英语中的状语从句有九大类，表达九种逻辑语义关系，分别为：

1. 原因状语从句
2. 结果状语从句
3. 目的状语从句
4. 让步状语从句
5. 条件状语从句
6. 比较状语从句
7. 方式状语从句
8. 地点状语从句
9. 时间状语从句

下面我们讲解九大状语从句之间的内在联系。我将其按以上顺序排列的逻辑思路如下：

首先，考虑到万事皆因果，所以我把表因果关系的从句放在最前面。因果律作为支配事物发展的基本规律，必然深刻影响着人们描述事物时的思维和语言表达。其次，状语从句的本质就是研究句间逻辑语义关系的，而因果关系是最为重要的一种关系，不仅涉及原因状语从句、结果状语从句、目的状语从句，还与让步状语从句有关。所以，我把这四类状语从句依次列举出来。先有因后有果，因此我先给出原因状语从句，后给出结果状语从句。把目的状语从句排在第三位是因为它与前面两类状语从句都有内在联系。一方面，从连词的角度来看，**so that** 既可以引导结果状语从句，又可以引导目的状语从句。另一方面，从逻辑语义的角度来看，目的状语从句也具有原因的意味。通常主句动作先发生，然后通过 **so that** 引导一个目的状语从句来解释为什么要做前面主句提到的动作，或者说用从句阐明主句动作的目的。简

言之，目的状语从句解释原因，主句表达结果，因此目的状语从句与主句之间也存在因果关系。比如这个例句：

a. I'll turn off the TV so that my roommate can study in peace and quiet.(我会把电视机关了，这样我的室友就能够安心学习了。)

我们可以把这句话拆分成下面两句话：

a1. I'll turn off the TV.

a2. I want to make sure that my roommate can study in peace and quiet.

这句话用 I want to make sure that. 来传达 so that. 的目的，然后用 because 连接这两句话：

b. I'll turn off the TV because I want to make sure that my roommate can study in peace and quiet.

由此可见，主句 I'll turn off the TV 是结果，从句 my roommate can study in peace and quiet 解释主句的动作，表示原因。（先后关系是：先有 a2 句这样的想法，然后才会有 a1 句这样的动作，最后才有 that 从句的结果。）

至于让步状语从句，前面已经讲过，它表达了一种反向的因果关系。

条件状语从句比较好理解，谈条件大家都不会陌生，比如“如果···，就···”：

If it rains tomorrow, we'll cancel the picnic.(如果明天下雨，我们就取消野餐。)

其实这背后也蕴含了一种因果关系：因为明天要下雨，所以我们要取消野餐。据此，我们可以把条件状语从句看作是具有条件意味的因果关系。可见，原因、结果、目的、让步、条件这五类状语从句都与因果律有关。接下来是比较状语从句。如果说前面五种状语从句反映的是因果客观规律，那么比较状语从句反映的则是主观认知心理。做比较是人类思维的一大特点，我们常常会通过各种类比、比较、比喻、隐喻等，来帮助我们认识新事物，这也符合人类从已知到未知的认知规律。比较状语从句与其他状语从句的差异也反映在句子的构造上：比较状语从句有自己独特的构造方式

a. I am as old as you.(我和你同岁。)

这是在比较年龄，用的是 as.as 同级比较。我们还可以用 as.as 这个比较结构来做类比，比如：

b. He is as wary of me as a police officer is of a thief.(他就像警察防小偷一样防着我。)

显然 b 句的结构要比 a 句复杂，但它们的构造思路是一样的。分别把它们还原成两个简单句就能看得更清楚。

a1. I am 20 years old.

a2. You are 20 years old.

而 b 句用了 be wary of sb “提防某人”的结构搭配，拆分成两个简单句是：b1. He is wary of me.

b2. A police officer is wary of a thief.

可见，比较状语从句 as you 其实是 as you are old 的省略形式，而 as a police officer is of a thief 是 as a police officer is wary of a thief 的省略形式，只不过 a 句中比较从句与主句重复的内容更多，因此其省略的内容更多。总之，比较状语从句不是状语从句的典型代表，它完全可以作为一个独立的从句大类，与状语从句并列。

剩下的三种状语从句都与动作有密切关系，分别表达动作的方式、地点及时间。之所以这样排序，是因为这也是简单句中的三大状语（方式状语、地点状语和时间状语）的排列顺序。比如：

He was singing quietly in the room last night.(昨晚那时他正在房间里轻声哼唱着。)

该句中状语的顺序是：方式状语 quietly+地点状语 in the room+时间状语 last night。

表达动作方式的从句通常由 **as** 或 **the way** 引导，我将会在“**as** 从句专著”中系统阐述。地点状语从句比较少见，应该是九大状语从句中使用频率最低的。时间状语从句本质上就是时态问题，不同的时间连词，其主句与从句的时态存在各种呼应关系

综上所述，这九大状语从句各具特点，不大相同，颇有“龙生九子，九子各不同”的意味。我

**n+v+n** 名词性从句：从句代替句子中的“成分”

(去掉则主句不完整；从句是由引导词引导的一个完整句子)

**定语从句---adj**：从句修饰或限定主句中的某个词

(去掉则主句完整；从句是由关系词引导的一个完整句子)

状语从句结构：主句+引导词+从句

I did not go to school. 结果

I was ill yesterday. 原因

I did not go to school **because** I was ill yesterday.

I was ill yesterday **so** I did not go to school.

在主从复合句中，修饰主句中的动词、形容词、副词等词的从句叫主从句，状语从句就是在句中作状语的句子。功能与副词几乎一致，去掉状从，主句意思和语法结构仍然完整。状语从句类型包括：时间、地点、原因、条件、目的、结果、让步等。

### 时间状语从句

在句子中起到时间状语的作用，引导时间状语从句的连词包括：**when**、**while**、**as**、**before**、**after**、**since**、**until**、**as soon as**、**once**、**next time** 等

1. **when** 引导的时间状语从句，意为“当...时，在...的时候”，谓语动词可以用**延续性的**，也可以用**终止性动词**。

例：

**When I was wandering in the street, I met her.**

**I met her when I was wandering in the street**

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

while 引导的时间状语从句，意思与 when 相近，但**从句谓语**常用延续性动词或表示状态的动词。

例：

They rushed in while we were discussing problems.

当我回来的时候，我的姐姐正在洗澡

I came back \_\_\_\_\_ my sister was taking a shower. B A

当我在看小视频的时候，我的妈妈正在做饭

I was watching a video \_\_\_\_\_ my mother was cooking. B A

A. when B. while

2. as 引导的时间状语从句，表达“（正当）...的时候，随着”等

1) 表示某一事发生，另一事情立即发生

例：

As the sun rose the fog disappeared. 太阳出来雾就散了。

2) 表示某事发生的过程中另外一件事发生

例：

We always sing as we walk. 我们总是边走边唱。

3) 表示两个动作同时发生

例：

**He smiled as he passed.**

两个句子都完整---状从---when---当...时候

He looked **just as he had looked** ten years before.

从句完整---**主句不完整**---主句缺表语--表语从句--正如

**As is expected, he has been absent.**

主句完整---从句“完整”---定语从句---正如

3. before 引导的时间状语从句，意为“在...之前，.....之后才”，**表示主句的动作发生在从句的动作之前。**

例：

Before I made the decision, she had already given up. 在我决定之前她已经放弃了。

4. after 引导的时间状语从句，意为“在...之后”，**表示主句发生的动作在从句动作之后。**

例：

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

After you use plastic bags, you mustn't throw them about.

用完塑料袋之后，不要到处乱扔。

5. since 引导的时间状语从句，意为“自从...以来”，主句常用完成时态，从句常用一般时态。

例：

We have made many dumplings since we began to cook. 自从我们开始做饭起，我们已经包了许多饺子了。

6. until/till 引导的时间状语从句，意为“直到...为止”

例：

I will stay here until you come back. 我会待在这里，直到你回来。

主将从现

当主句的谓语动词是**延续性动词**时，主句常用肯定形式；当主句的谓语是**终止性动词**时，主句常用否定形式，not...until...，意为“直到...才...”

例：

He didn't leave home until his father came back .

他直到父亲回来才离开家。

He will not leave home until his father comes back.

7. as soon as 引导的时间状语从句意为“一...就...”

例：

The boy ran to the school as soon as his father went out. 男孩的父亲一出去，他就跑去学校了。

句子 1+as soon as+句子 2      一 句子 2 就 句子 1

8. once 引导的时间状语从句，意为“一旦...就...”

例：

Once you begin, you must go on. 一旦你开始了，就必须继续下去。

### 地点状语从句

地点状语从句一般由 where 和 wherever 引导，可在句中，句首或句末。

例：

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

Wherever I am I will be thinking of you.

不管在哪里我都会想你的。

Just stay where you are and don't move.

你待在原地别动。

wherever=no matter where

## 原因状语从句

### 1. because 引导的原因状语从句

because 表示的因果关系的**语气最强**，常用于来回答 why 提问的问句，原因往往是听话人所不知道的，所以从句比主句显得更重要。

例：

He is absent today because he is ill. 因为他生病了，所以今天没来。

### 2. since 引导的原因状语从句，表示人们已知的原因，语气较弱，翻译为“既然....”

例：

Since you are so sure of it, he will believe you.

既然你对此这么有把握，他会相信你的。

3. as 引导的原因状语从句，与 since 用法差不多，表示的理由在说话人看来已经很明显，语气最弱，主句与从句没有轻重之分

例：

I left a message as you weren't there. 你没在那里，我留了个字条。

## 目的状语从句

### 1. in order that/so that 引导的目的状语从句 so...that...

例：

We shall let you know the details soon **in order that/so that** you can make your arrangements

不久我们将会让你知道详情，以便你能做出安排。

### 2. for fear/in case/lest 引导的目的状语从句

for fear 表示“唯恐，以防”，in case 表示“以防万一”，lest 表示“以免，免得”

例：

The victims all seemed afraid to say the facts **for fear** it should start trouble.

受害人似乎不敢说出真相怕引起麻烦。

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

I stayed all day at home **in case** you came.

我一整天都在家以防你来找我。

She turned away from the window **lest** anyone see her.

她转身离开窗边，免得有人看见她。

注：在 **for fear that, in case, lest** 引导的从句中，若用虚拟语气时，从句谓语为：**should + 动词原形**。并且 **should** 不能省略

例：

She examined the door again **for fear that** a thief should come in. 她又把门检查了一遍，以防盗贼的进入。

He started out earlier **lest** he should be late. 他很早就出发了以防迟到。

主句+for fear that, in case, lest+从句: should do

## 结果状语从句

结果状语从句是表示事态结果的从句，通常主句是原因，从句是结果。由 **so that**（从句谓语一般没有情态动词），**so ... that, such ... that** 等引导。

She was ill, so that she didn't attend the meeting. (因此../为了..)

He was **so excited** that he could **not** say a word. (如此...以至于..)

Too...to..太...以至于**不能**...

He was too excited to say a word.

she is **a good teacher**

She is **such** \_\_\_\_\_ that everyone admires her. (如此...以至于..)

She is **so** \_\_\_\_\_ that everyone admires her.

a good teacher

good a teacher

## 条件状语从句

条件状语从句分真实性 (有可能实现的事情) 与 *非真实性* (条件与事实相反或者在说话者看来不大可能实现的事情) 条件句。引导条件状语从句的词 (组) 主要有 if, unless, so (as) long as, on condition that 等。注意: 条件从句中, 一般要用 一般现在时代替一般将来时, 一般过去时代替过去将来时, 现在完成时代替将来完成时。

1. if 引导的条件状语从句

例:

If you don't learn to think, you will never learn.

如果你不思考, 你将永远学不会。

2. unless 引导的条件状语从句, 意为“除非....、如果不...”

例:

Unless it rains, the game will be played.

除非下雨, 要不然比赛继续。

3. as long as 引导的条件状语从句, 意为“只要...就好”

例:

You may borrow the book so long as you keep it clean.

只要你把书保持干净就可以借走。

4. on condition (that) 引导的条件状语从句, 意为“在...条件下”, 表示从句是主句描述事情发生的前提条件或唯一条件。

例:

I can tell you the truth on condition that (if) you promise to keep it a secret.

我可以告诉你真相, 条件是你要答应保密。

## 让步状语从句

常用来引导让步状语从句的词有: although/though, even though, even if, as, whether, while, whatever, however, whenever, no matter what/how 等。

1. though/although 引导的让步状语从句, 意为“尽管”, 一般情况下可以互换, although 语气较重可以放在句首。

例:

Although he is rich, yet he is not happy. 虽然他很有钱, 但是他不快乐。

**Although he is rich**, he is not happy.

Because he was ill, so he didn't go to school.

~~Because~~ he was ill, so he didn't go to school.

Because he was ill, ~~so~~ he didn't go to school.

They are generous though they are poor. 虽然他们很穷但很慷慨。

2. even if/even though 引导的让步状语从句，意为“虽然，即使，纵然”，语气更强的让步，even though 更加强调对既定事实的让步，even if 更强调对假设的让步。

例：

**Even if he is poor**, she loves him=he may be poor,yet she loves him.

**Even though he is poor**, she loves him=he is poor, yet she loves him.

3. as 引导的让步状语从句，意为“尽管，虽然”，从句中的表语、状语或实义动词要放在句首，如果放在句首的是名词，名词前不用加冠词。

例：

**Urgent as the message is**, it is impossible to send it there in time.

消息很紧急，但及时送到那里不可能。

~~As the message is urgent, it is impossible to send it there in time.~~

~~as he is a child , he knows a lot.~~

Child as he is , he knows a lot.

虽然他是个孩子，但他懂很多。

~~as you may object , I will go.~~

Object as you may, I will go.

即使你反对，我也要去。

4. while 引导的让步状语从句，表示“尽管，虽然”，但语气较弱

例：

**While she is a likeable girl**, she can be ridiculous.

虽然她很可爱，但有时候会很蠢。

5. wh-ever 类和 no matter what/how 类引导的让步状语从句

例：

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

**Whatever** you say ,I won't believe you.= **No matter what** you say, I won't believe you.

**Whenever** I'm unhappy, it is my friend who cheers me up.=**no matter when** I'm unhappy, it is my friend who cheers me up.

注:

**no matter**+疑问词 只能引导让步状语从句, 而 **wh-ever** 类还可以引导名词性从句

I will take whoever wants to go.

~~I will take no matter who wants to go.~~

### 作业与练习

- I'll let you know \_\_\_\_ he comes back.  
A. before                      B. because                      C. as soon as                      D. although
- She will sing a song \_\_\_\_ she is asked.  
A. if                      B. unless                      C. for                      D. since
- We will work \_\_\_\_ we are needed.  
A. whenever                      B. because                      C. since                      D. wherever
- Read it aloud \_\_\_\_ the class can hear you.  
A. so that                      B. if                      C. when                      D. although
- \_\_\_\_ you go, don't forget your people.  
A. Whenever                      B. However                      C. Wherever                      D. Whichever
- It is about ten years \_\_\_\_ I met you last.  
A. since                      B. for                      C. when                      D. as
- They will never succeed, \_\_\_\_ hard they try.  
A. because                      B. however                      C. when                      D. since
- \_\_\_\_ still half drunk, he made his way home.  
A. When                      B. Because                      C. Though                      D. As
- \_\_\_\_ she was very tired, she went on working.  
A. As                      B. Although                      C. Even                      D. In spite of
- Busy \_\_\_\_ he was, he tried his best to help you.  
A. as                      B. when                      C. since                      D. for

11. I learned a little Russian \_\_\_\_\_ I was at middle school.  
A. though            B. although        C. as if            D. when
12. \_\_\_\_\_ we got to the station, the train had left already.  
A. If                B. Unless            C. Since            D. When
13. \_\_\_\_\_ the rain stops, we' 11 set off for the station.  
A. Before            B. Unless            C. As soon as        D. Though
14. She was \_\_\_\_\_ tired \_\_\_\_\_ she could not move an inch.  
A. so, that            B. such, that        C. very, that        D. so, as
15. We didn't go home \_\_\_\_\_ we finished the work.  
A. since            B. until            C. because        D. though
16. I'll stay here \_\_\_\_\_ everyone else comes back.  
A. even if            B. as though        C. because        D. until
17. Although it's raining, \_\_\_\_\_ are still working in the field.  
A. they            B. but they        C. and they        D. so they
18. Speak to him slowly \_\_\_\_\_ he may understand you better.  
A. since            B. so that            C. for            D. because
19. You'll miss the train \_\_\_\_\_ you hurry up.  
A. unless            B. as            C. if            D. until
20. When you read the book, you' d better make a mark \_\_\_\_\_ you have any questions.  
A. at which        B. at where        C. the place        D. where
21. We'd better hurry \_\_\_\_\_ it is getting dark.  
A. and            B. but            C. as            D. unless
22. I didn't manage to do it \_\_\_\_\_ you had explained how.  
A. until            B. unless            C. when            D. before
23. \_\_\_\_\_ he comes, we won't be able to go.  
A. Without        B. Unless            C. Except            D. Even
24. I hurried \_\_\_\_\_ I wouldn't be late for class.  
A. since            B. so that            C. as if            D. unless
25. \_\_\_\_\_ I catch a cold, I have pain in my back.

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

A. Every time    B. Though    C. Even    D. Where

26. What's the matter \_\_\_\_\_ they still haven't answered the telegram?

A. when    B. that    C. though    D. however

27. Bring it nearer \_\_\_\_\_ I may see it better.

A. although    B. even though    C. so that    D. since

28. You may arrive in Beijing early \_\_\_\_\_ you mind taking the night train.

A. that    B. though    C. unless    D. if

29. Helen listened carefully \_\_\_\_\_ she might discover exactly what she needed.

A. in that    B. in order that    C. in case    D. even though

30. More people will eat out in restaurants \_\_\_\_\_ they do today.

A. than    B. when    C. while    D. as

31. \_\_\_\_\_ hard she tries, she can hardly avoid making mistakes in her homework.

A. Much    B. However    C. As    D. Although

32. Poor \_\_\_\_\_ it may be, there is no place like home, \_\_\_\_\_ you may go.

A. as; wherever    B. though; whenever    C. in spite of; when    D. that; wherever

33. The child was \_\_\_\_\_ immediately after supper.

A. enough tired to go to bed    B. too tired to go to bed  
C. so tired that he went to bed    D. very tired, he went to bed

34. The history of nursing \_\_\_\_\_ the history of man.

A. as old as    B. is old than    C. that is as old as    D. is as old as

35. \_\_\_\_\_ born in Chicago, the author was famous for his stories about New York.

A. Since    B. Once    C. When    D. Although

36. \_\_\_\_\_ we stood at the top of the building, the people below were hardly visible.

A. As    B. Although    C. Unless    D. In spite of

37. Scarcely was George Washington in his teens \_\_\_\_\_ his father died.

A. than    B. as    C. while    D. when

38. \_\_\_\_\_ David goes, he is welcome.

A. Whichever    B. However    C. Wherever    D. Whatever

39. The house stood \_\_\_\_\_ there had been a rock.

A. which    B. at which    C. when    D. where

40. Small \_\_\_\_\_ it is, the pen is a most useful tool.  
A. because      B. so      C. if      D. as
41. After the new technique was introduced, the factory produced \_\_\_\_\_ tractors in 1988 as the year before.  
A. as twice many      B. as many twice      C. twice as many      D. twice many as
42. The piano in the other shop will be \_\_\_\_\_, but \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. cheaper; not as better      B. more cheap; not as better  
C. cheaper; not as good      D. more cheap; not as good
43. John plays football \_\_\_\_\_, if not better than, David.  
A. as well      B. as well as      C. so well      D. so well as
44. Although he is considered a great writer,  
A. his works are not widely read      B. but his works are not widely read  
C. however his works are not widely read      D. still his works are not widely read
45. \_\_\_\_\_ the day went on, the weather got worse.  
A. With      B. Since      C. While      D. As
- 46.—What was the party like?  
—Wonderful. It's years \_\_\_\_\_ I enjoyed myself so much.  
A. after      B. when      C. before      D. since
47. It was not \_\_\_\_\_ she took off her dark glasses \_\_\_\_\_ I realized she was a famous film star.  
A. when; that      B. until; that      C. until; when      D. when; then
48. If we work with a strong will, we can overcome any difficulty, \_\_\_\_\_ great it is.  
A. what      B. how      C. however      D. whatever
49. After the war, a new school building was put up \_\_\_\_\_ there had once been a theatre.  
A. that      B. where      C. which      D. when
50. \_\_\_\_\_, Mother will wait for him to have dinner together.  
A. However late is he      B. However he is late  
C. However is he late      D. However late he is

### 答案与解析

1. C. as soon as

表示“一回来就通知你”，强调时间紧接。

2. A. if

条件句，“如果被要求，她就会唱”。

3. D. wherever

地点状语，“无论哪里需要，我们都会工作”。

4. A. so that

目的状语，“大声读，以便全班能听见”。

5. C. Wherever

地点让步，“无论你去哪里，别忘了你的人”。

6. A. since

“自从上次见你已约十年”，since 接时间点。

7. B. however

让步状语，“无论多努力，他们都不会成功”。

8. C. Though

让步，“尽管半醉，他还是回家了”。

9. B. Although

让步，“尽管很累，她继续工作”。

10. A. as

让步倒装结构，“尽管忙，他尽力帮你”。

11. D. when

时间状语，“中学时学了一点俄语”。

12. D. When

时间状语，“我们到车站时，火车已离开”。

13. C. As soon as

时间状语，“雨一停，我们就出发”。

14. A. so, that

结果状语，“她太累，寸步难行”。

15. B. until

“直到完成工作，我们才回家”。

16. D. until

时间状语，“我会留到其他人回来”。

17. A. they

Although 不与 but 连用，直接接主句。

18. B. so that

目的状语，“慢慢说，让他更好理解”。

19. A. unless

条件否定，“除非快点，否则会错过火车”。

20. D. where

地点状语，“在有问题的地方做标记”。

21. C. as

原因状语，“天快黑了，我们得快点”。

22. A. until

“直到你解释后，我才做成”。

23. B. Unless

条件否定，“除非他来，否则我们不能去”。

24. B. so that

目的状语，“我赶时间以免迟到”。

25. A. Every time

时间状语，“每次感冒都会背痛”。

26. B. that

同位语从句，“问题在于他们没回电报”。

27. C. so that

目的状语，“拿近点，让我看清”。

28. C. unless

条件否定，“除非你介意夜车，否则早点到”。

29. B. in order that

目的状语，“仔细听以发现所需内容”。

30. A. than

比较级，“更多人外出吃饭（比现在多）”。

31. B. However

让步状语，“无论多努力，作业仍出错”。

32. A. as; wherever

让步倒装 (Poor as it may be) + 地点让步。

33. C. so tired that he went to bed

结果状语，“孩子太累，直接去睡了”。

34. D. is as old as

同级比较，“护理史与人类史一样古老”。

35. D. Although

让步，“虽出生在芝加哥，但以纽约故事闻名”。

36. A. As

时间状语，“我们站在楼顶时，下面的人几乎看不见”。

37. D. when

Scarcely...when 固定搭配，“刚十几岁父亲就去世了”。

38. C. Wherever

地点让步，“无论大卫去哪，都受欢迎”。

39. D. where

地点状语，“房子立在曾经有岩石的地方”。

40. D. as

让步倒装，“笔虽小，但很有用”。

41. C. twice as many

倍数表达，“产量是前一年的两倍”。

42. C. cheaper; not as good

比较级，“更便宜但不如另一家好”。

43. B. as well as

同级比较，“约翰踢球不比大卫差”。

44. A. his works are not widely read

Although 不与 but/however/still 连用。

45. D. As

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

时间推移，“随着时间推移，天气变糟”。

46. D. since

“多年没这么开心了”，since 接时间点。

47. B. until; that

It was not until...that 强调句，“直到摘墨镜我才认出她”。

48. C. however

让步状语，“无论困难多大，都能克服”。

49. B. where

地点状语，“在曾为剧院的地方建了新校”。

50. D. However late he is

让步状语，“无论他多晚，母亲都等他吃饭”。

语法重点总结:

1. 时间状语: as soon as, when, until, since
2. 目的/结果: so that, in order that, so...that
3. 让步: although, though, as (倒装), however, wherever
4. 条件: if, unless
5. 比较: as...as, than, twice as many

## 十四课: 虚拟语气

虚拟语气用来表示说话人的主观愿望或假想，而不表示客观存在的事实，所说的是一个条件，**不一定是事实**，或与**事实相反**。虚拟语气通过**谓语动词的特殊形式**来表示。

### 1. if非真实从句虚拟

If真实条件状语从句: **主将从现**

翻译: 如果明天不下雨，我们就出去玩。

If it does not rain tomorrow, we will go outing.

翻译: 如果我是个女孩，那么我一定很漂亮。

----虚拟语气

If I am a girl, I will be beautiful.

**谓语动词的特殊形式**





沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

If he had known the answer--he had known the answer--had he known the answer

= Had he known the answer, he would have told me.

If I were rich, I could go there.--- I were rich, I could go there.--- Were I rich, I could go there.

=Were I rich, I could go there.

## 2. 其他虚拟

1. Wish 的宾语从句
2. As if/as though (似乎)
3. If only... (要是..就好了)

与现在事实相反	一般过去时( be 用 were )
与过去事实相反	与过去事实相反: 过去完成时
与将来事实相反	与将来事实相反: would/could + V.原 注: 不可以用 should

例:

I wish I were you. 我希望我是你。

我希望以后我能变成一个女孩=== I wish I would be a girl.

我希望我之前刻苦学习=== I wish I had studied hard before.

The pencil seems as if/though it were broken when it is partly put in the water.

当把铅笔的一部分放入水中时，它看上去好像断了一样。

主语+seems (系动词) +表从 (状从)

If only I were admitted to ZJU. 要是我被浙大录取就好了。

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

#### 4. But for/without (如果没有)

虚拟语气的用法一般是：对现在/将来的虚拟：would+do；对过去的虚拟：would(not) + have done。

But for/without+句子====if not.....+主句

例：

I'd have been lost but for you. 要不是你，我就走迷路了。

Without water, the fish would die. 要是没有水，那条鱼就死了。

#### 5. Would rather

宁愿，但愿

Sb did... 与现在或将来事实相反

Sb had done... 与过去事实相反

例：

I would rather you returned me my money now.

I would rather we hadn't told her the bad news.

翻译：我宁愿三年前没有和她结婚。

I would rather I hadn't married with her three years ago.

#### 6. 宾语从句遇到 (注意真实和非真实) :

一 “坚持” insist

二“命令” order / command

三“建议” suggest / advise / propose

四 “要求”demand / require / request/ask + that sb (should) do

他坚持要和我们一起吃午饭。



沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

我们应该努力学习传统文化，这很重要。

It is important for us to learn traditional culture.

It is important that we (should) try our best to learn traditional culture.

8. It is (high / about) time that sb did/ sb should do. (should 不可以省)

“是时候…… (做某事)”

例:

It is (high / about) time that you \_\_\_\_\_ your confidence.

是时候来展现你的自信了。

情态动词表虚拟

should/ought to have done	过去本应该做某事却没做
shouldn' t/oughtn' t to have done	过去本不该做某事却做了
need have done	过去本有必要做却未做
needn' t have done	过去本不必做某事却做了
could have done	过去本能够做某事却没做

I should have studied hard when I was young.

在我年轻的时候本应该努力学习 (本应该努力学习但却没有)

翻译: 一年前, 我本不应该伤害她。should have done=should not have done

I should not have hurt her one year ago.

例:

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。



他本该在读书，但他选择追求梦想

He should have studied, but he chose to chase dreams.



他本不该在酒后开车

He should not have driven after drinking

### 虚拟语气小练习

1. If I \_\_\_\_ where he lived, I \_\_\_\_ a note to him.  
A. knew, would  
B. had known, would have sent  
C. know, would send  
D. knew, would have sent
2. If they \_\_\_\_ earlier than expected, they \_\_\_\_ here now.  
A. had started, would be  
B. started, might be  
C. had started, would have been  
D. will start, might have been
3. I didn' t know his telephone number. \_\_\_\_ it, I \_\_\_\_ then.  
A. Had I known, would ring him up  
B. Should I know, would have rung him up  
C. If I knew; would ring him up  
D. Had I known; would have rung him up
4. Mary is ill today. If she \_\_\_\_\_, she \_\_\_\_\_ absent from school.  
A. were not ill; wouldn' t be  
B. had been ill; wouldn't have been  
C. had been ill; should have been  
D. hadn't been ill; could be
5. Were I to do it, I \_\_\_\_\_ it some other way.

- A. will do                      B. would do                      C. would have done      D. were to do
6. I \_\_\_\_\_ him the answer \_\_\_\_\_ possible, but I was so busy then.  
A. could tell; if it had been                      B. must have told; were it  
C. should have told; had it been                      D. should have told; should it be
7. Without your help, we \_\_\_\_\_ so much.  
A. won ' t achieve                      B. didn ' t achieve  
C. don't achieve                      D. wouldn't have achieved
8. You didn't take his advice. \_\_\_\_\_ his advice, you \_\_\_\_\_ such a mistake.  
A. Had you taken; wouldn't have made      B. If you had taken; would make  
C. Were you lo take; shouldn' t have made      D. Have you taken; won t have made
9. We wish we \_\_\_\_ what you did when we were at high school.  
A. did                      B. could have done                      C. have done                      D. should do
10. She wishes she \_\_\_\_ to the theatre last night.  
A. went                      B. would go                      C. had gone                      D. were going
11. Tom is very short now. His mother wishes that he \_\_\_\_\_ be tall when he grows up.  
A. could                      B. should                      C. would                      D. were able to
12. My sister advised me that I \_\_\_\_\_ accept the invitation.  
A. could                      B. must                      C. should                      D. might
13. He asks that he \_\_\_\_\_ an opportunity to explain why he' s refused to go there.  
A. is given                      B. must give                      C. should give                      D. be given
14. Do you think of Wang Fang's suggestion that he \_\_\_\_\_ Mr. Li to the party?  
A. will invite                      B. have invited                      C. is invited                      D. invite
15. I insisted that he \_\_\_\_\_ at once.  
A. be gone                      B. go                      C. would go                      D. might go
16. Li Ming insisted that he \_\_\_\_\_ anything at all.  
A. hadn ' t stolen                      B. shouldn ' t steal                      C. doesn ' t steal                      D. steal
17. It is quite natural that my coming late again \_\_\_\_\_ them very angry.  
A. had made                      B. would make                      C. makes                      D. make
18. He acted as if he \_\_\_\_\_ everything in the world.  
A. knew                      B. knows                      C. has known                      D. won't know

19. Read it aloud so that I \_\_\_\_\_ you clearly.  
A. may hear            B. will hear            C. hear            D. have heard
20. They got up early in order that they \_\_\_\_\_ they first train.  
A. caught            B. will catch            C. might catch            D. shall catch
21. I am sorry that he \_\_\_\_\_ in such poor health.  
A. are            B. shall be            C. were            D. should be
22. That is a good book. You \_\_\_\_\_ it yesterday.  
A. could buy            B. should buy            C. should have bought            D. bought
23. It is high time we \_\_\_\_\_ home.  
A. will go            B. would go            C. have gone            D. went
24. I ' d rather that you \_\_\_\_\_ home.  
A. went            B. have gone            C. will go            D. had gone
25. If only I \_\_\_\_\_ to the lecture!  
A. listen            B. will listen            C. am listening            D. had listened
26. ---- If he \_\_\_\_\_ , he \_\_\_\_\_ that food.            ---- Luckily he was sent to the hospital immediately.  
A. was warned; would not take            B. had been warned; would not have taken  
C. would be warned; had not taken            D. would have been warned; had not taken
27. I didn' t see your sister at the meeting. If she \_\_\_\_\_, she would have met my brother.  
A. has come            B. did come            C. came            D. had come
28. Without electricity, human life \_\_\_\_\_ quite different today.  
A. is            B. will be            C. would have been            D. would be
29. He \_\_\_\_\_ you more help, even though he was very busy.  
A. might have given            B. might give            C. may have given            D. may give
30. If city noises \_\_\_\_\_ from increasing, people \_\_\_\_\_ shout to be heard even at the dinner table 20 years from now.

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

- A. are not kept; will have to                      B. are not kept; have to  
C. do not keep; will have to                      D. do not keep; have to
31. Mike's father, as well as his mother, insisted that he \_\_\_\_\_ home.  
A. stayed                      B. could stay                      C. has stayed                      D. stay
32. Mr. Smith insisted that he \_\_\_\_\_ the work all.  
A. had done                      B. have done                      C. did                      D. so
33. Jane would never have gone to the party \_\_\_\_\_ that Mary would come to see her.  
A. has she known      B. had she known      C'. if she know                      D. if she has known
34. If you had enough money, what \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. will you buy      B. would you buy      C. would you have bought      D. will you have bought
35. If you \_\_\_\_\_ that film late last night, you wouldn't be so sleepy.  
A. didn't see                      B. haven't seen                      C. wouldn' t have seen                      D. hadn' t seen
36. Our monitor requested that \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. all the class studied more carefully the problem  
B. the problem was more carefully studied  
C. with great care the problem could be studied  
D. all the class study the problem more carefully
37. ---- Would you have called her up had it been possible?  
---- Yes, but I \_\_\_\_\_ busy doing my homework..  
A. was                      B. were                      C. had been                      D. would be
38. His tired face suggested that he \_\_\_\_\_ really tired after the long walk.  
A. had been                      B. was                      C. be                      D. should be
39. It is important that we \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. shall close the window before we leave                      B. will close the window before we leave  
C. must close the window before we leave                      D. close the window before we leave
40. I didn't know his telephone number, otherwise I \_\_\_\_\_ him.  
A. had telephoned                      B. would telephone                      C. would have telephoned      D. Telephone

### 答案与解析

**B. had known, would have sent**

解析：这是与过去事实相反的虚拟语气（第三条件句），结构为 **If + had done, would have done**。句意：“如果我知道他住哪儿，我早就给他寄便条了。”（事实是“不知道，所以没寄”）

**A. had started, would be**

解析：混合虚拟语气，前半句与过去相反（**had started**），后半句与现在相反（**would be**）。句意：“如果他们早点出发，现在就能到这儿了。”（事实是“没早出发，所以现在不在”）

**D. Had I known; would have rung him up**

解析：省略 **if** 的倒装句（**Had I known = If I had known**），第三条件句。句意：“如果我知道他的电话号码，当时就给他打电话了。”（事实是“不知道，所以没打”）

**A. were not ill; wouldn't be**

解析：与现在事实相反的虚拟语气（第二条件句），结构为 **If + 过去式 (were/did), would do**。句意：“如果玛丽今天没生病，她就不会缺课。”（事实是“她生病了”）

**B. would do**

解析：**Were I to do it = If I were to do it**（第二条件句），表示对将来的假设，主句用 **would do**。句意：“如果我来做，我会用另一种方式。”

**C. should have told; had it been**

解析：

**should have told**: 本应该做却没做（虚拟语气表责备）。

**had it been = if it had been**（省略 **if** 的倒装，第三条件句）。

句意：“我本可以告诉他答案的，如果当时有可能的话。”（事实是“当时太忙，没说”）

**D. wouldn't have achieved**

解析：**Without your help = If you hadn't helped**（第三条件句），主句用 **wouldn't have done**。句意：“没有你的帮助，我们不会取得这么多成就。”

**A. Had you taken; wouldn't have made**

解析：**Had you taken = If you had taken**（第三条件句），主句用 **wouldn't have made**。句意：“如果你听了他的建议，就不会犯这种错误。”

**B. could have done**

解析：**wish + 过去完成时 (could have done)** 表示对过去的遗憾。句意：“我们希望高中时能像你那样做。”（事实是“当时没做到”）

**C. had gone**

解析：**wish + 过去完成时 (had done)** 表示对过去的后悔。句意：“她真希望昨晚去了剧院。”（事实是“没去”）

**C. would**

解析：**wish + would do** 表示对将来的愿望（通常用于他人可能改变的行为）。句意：“汤姆现在很矮，他妈妈希望他长大后能长高。”

**C. should**

解析：**advise/suggest/demand** 等词后的宾语从句用 **should + 动词原形 (should 可省略)**。句意：“我姐姐建议我接受邀请。”

**D. be given**

解析：**ask/request** 后的从句用 **should + 动词原形 (should 可省略，此处用被动语态)**。句意：“他要求得到一个机会解释为何拒绝去那里。”

**D. invite**

解析: suggestion 后的同位语从句用 should + 动词原形 (should 可省略)。句意: “你觉得王芳提议邀请李先生参加聚会怎么样?”

B. go

解析: insist 表示“坚持要求”时, 从句用 should + 动词原形 (should 可省略)。句意: “我坚持让他立刻离开。”

A. hadn't stolen

解析: insist 表示“坚持事实”时, 从句用正常时态 (此处用过去完成时)。句意: “李明坚称自己根本没偷东西。”

D. make

解析: It is natural 后的主语从句用 should + 动词原形 (should 可省略)。句意: “我再次迟到让他们生气是很自然的。”

A. knew

解析: as if 后接过去式 (knew) 表示与现在事实相反的假设。句意: “他表现得好像什么都懂。” (事实是“他不懂”)

A. may hear

解析: so that 引导目的状语从句, 常用 may/can/might/could + 动词原形。句意: “大声读, 这样我才能听清。”

C. might catch

解析: in order that 引导目的状语从句, 用 might/could + 动词原形。句意: “他们早起是为了赶上第一班火车。”

D. should be

解析: It is sorry/surprising 后的从句用 should + 动词原形 (表惊讶或遗憾)。句意: “我真遗憾他身体这么差。”

C. should have bought

解析: should have done 表示“本应该做却没做”。句意: “这是本好书, 你昨天真该买。” (但没买)

D. went

解析: It is (high) time 后的从句用过去式 (虚拟语气)。句意: “我们该回家了。”

A. went

解析: would rather 后的从句用过去式 (虚拟语气)。句意: “我宁愿你现在回家。”

D. had listened

解析: If only 后用过去完成时 (had done) 表示对过去的强烈愿望。句意: “要是我听了那个讲座就好了!”

B. had been warned; would not have taken

解析: 第三条件句 (与过去事实相反)。句意: “如果他当时被警告了, 就不会吃那种食物。” (事实是“没被警告, 所以吃了”)

D. had come

解析: 第三条件句。句意: “如果她来了, 就会见到我哥哥。” (事实是“她没来”)

D. would be

解析: Without 引导的虚拟语气, 与现在事实相反 (would be)。句意: “没有电, 人类生活今天会大不相同。”

A. might have given

解析: might have done 表示“本可能做” (但没做)。句意: “即使他很忙, 他本可以给你更多帮助的。”

**A. are not kept; will have to**

解析：真实条件句（非虚拟），主句用一般将来时。句意：“如果城市噪音不加以控制，20年后人们吃饭时都得大喊才能被听见。”

**D. stay**

解析：insist 表示“坚持要求”，从句用 should + 动词原形（should 可省略）。句意：“迈克的父母坚持让他待在家。”

**A. had done**

解析：insist 表示“坚持事实”，从句用正常时态（过去完成时）。句意：“史密斯先生坚持说这工作全是他做的。”

**B. had she known**

解析：倒装句（Had she known = If she had known），第三条件句。句意：“简要是知道玛丽会来看她，就绝不会去派对。”

**B. would you buy**

解析：第二条件句（与现在事实相反）。句意：“如果你有足够的钱，你会买什么？”

**D. hadn't seen**

解析：混合虚拟语气，前半句与过去相反（hadn't seen），后半句与现在相反（wouldn't be）。句意：“如果你昨晚没看那部电影，现在就不会这么困。”

**D. all the class study the problem more carefully**

解析：request 后的从句用 should + 动词原形（should 可省略）。句意：“班长要求全班更仔细地研究这个问题。”

**A. was**

解析：虚拟问句（Would you have called?），但答句是事实（当时很忙），用一般过去时。句意：“——如果可能的话，你会打电话给她吗？——会的，但我当时在写作业。”

**B. was**

解析：suggest 表示“暗示/表明”时，从句用正常时态（此处为过去式）。句意：“他疲惫的脸色表明他走远路后真的很累。”

**D. close the window before we leave**

解析：It is important 后的主语从句用 should + 动词原形（should 可省略）。句意：“我们离开前必须关窗。”

**C. would have telephoned**

解析：otherwise 隐含虚拟语气（与过去相反），用 would have done。句意：“我不知道他的电话号码，否则早就打给他了。”

## 十五课：主谓一致

主谓一致的概念：主语和其谓语动词在人称和数上保持一致。

主谓一致分为三种情况：语法一致，内容一致，就近一致

### 1. 语法一致

(1) 如果主语后面跟有 with、together with, along with, but, except, like, in addition to, including, besides, as well as, as much as, rather than, more than 等短语再加一个名词时，谓语动词仍与主语（第一个词）保持一致。如：

例：

A library together with 5000 books **was** given to our school as a gift.

Mr. Johnson as well as his wife and children **is** visiting the Great Wall now.

the wife and children as well as Mr. Johnson **are** visiting the Great Wall now.

变式训练：

Mr. Johnson , his wife and children **are** visiting the Great Wall now.

All but Tom have gone to the cinema.

(2) 用 and 连接的并列主语，如果主语是同一个人、同一事物或同一概念时，谓语动词用单数，否则用复数。如：

例：

A teacher **and** writer **is** going to give us a speech.

A teacher **and** a writer **are** going to give us a speech.

The professor and scientist has already come.

A teacher and a writer are in the office.

(3) 不定式（短语）、动名词（短语）或主语从句作主语时，谓语动词用单数。如：

To learn English well **takes** effort. Serving the people **is** my great happiness.

When we' ll go for an outing **has** not been decided yet.

How he can speak so good English **interests** us all.

(4) 用 and 连接的并列主语被 each, every, no 或 many a 修饰时，谓语动词用单数。如：

Each boy and each girl **has** been given a gift.

No teacher and no student **is** in the classroom.

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

Every pen and every book \_\_\_\_\_ ( lay ) on the desk already.

has been laid

Many a boy and many a girl **is** interested in her lesson.

(5) each of + 复数代词，谓语动词用**单数**，复数代词 + each，谓语动词用复数。如：

**Each** of us **has** something to say.

**Each** of them **has** been given a piece of bread.

We **each** **have** a dictionary.

They **each** have done their work.

(6) none 作主语，修饰可数名词复数时，谓语动词可用**单数**也可用复数，但修饰不可数名词时，谓语动词只能用**单数**。如：

None of us are(is) perfect.

None of these books are(is) mine.

None of his money has been found again.

None of this worries me.

(7) 名词如 trousers, scissors, glasses, goods , clothes 等作主语时，谓语动词必须用复数，但当它们前面有 a pair of 或 one pair of 修饰时，谓语动词只能用单数。如：

My trousers **are** black.

His glasses are expensive.

A pair of trousers **lies** on my bed.

A pair of glasses **was** given to me as a gift.

(8) 形复意单名词如: news; 以-ics 结尾的学科名词如: physics, mathematics, economics; 国名如: the United States; 报纸名如: the New York Times; 书名如: Arabian Nights 《天方夜谭》; 以及 the United Nations 等作主语时, 谓语动词要用单数。如:

Arabian Nights is full of interesting stories.

The New York Times is a popular reading material for students.

Physics is my favourite subjects.

(9) 百分数 (或分数) + of + 可数名词单数 (或不可数名词) 谓语动词用单数; 百分数 (或分数) + of + 可数名词复数, 谓语动词用复数。 如:

Twenty percent of land has been turned into a playground.

Two thirds of the apple is rotten.

Sixty percent of the workers in the factory are women.

(10) A (large) quantity of + N. 动词的数由名词决定;

A (large) amount of + N. (不可数名词) 谓语动词用单数,

但是,

Large quantities of + N.

Large amounts of + N. 谓语动词用复数。

A large quantity of sugar has been put in the boiled water.

A large quantity of people have been put in the boiled water.

Large quantities of money have been wasted on the project.

A large amount of time has been spent on English.

Large amounts of time have been saved by the new invention.

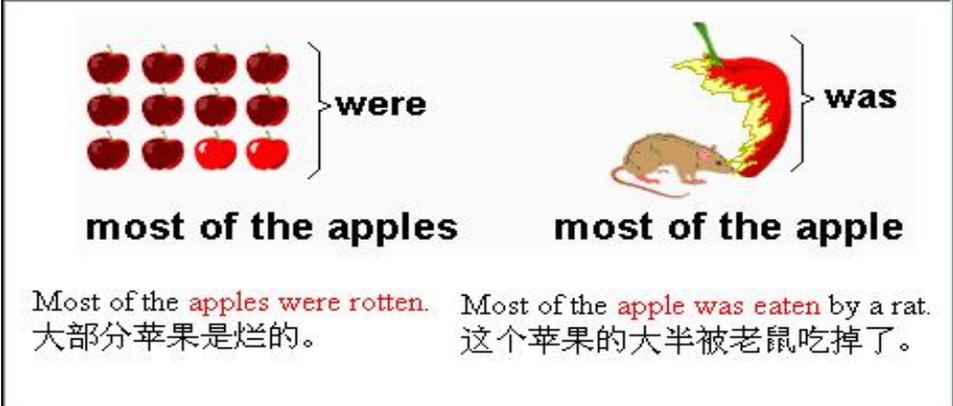
(11) 在 “one of + 复数名词 + 定语从句” 结构中, 定语从句中谓语动词的用复数; 但如果 one 前面有 the only 修饰时, 定语从句的谓语动词只能用单数。 如:

*Mary is one of the students that have been invited to sing at the concert.*

*Mary is the only one of the students that has been invited to sing at the concert.*

## 2. 内容一致

(1) 不定代词 *all, most, some* 等作助于数，谓语动词的单复数取决于它们所指代的名词的数。如：



The diagram shows two examples of 'most of the' used as subjects. On the left, there are 12 red apples arranged in a 3x4 grid. A bracket to the right of the apples is labeled 'were'. Below the apples is the text 'most of the apples'. On the right, there is a single red apple with a bite taken out of it, and a small brown rat is shown eating it. A bracket to the right of the apple is labeled 'was'. Below the apple is the text 'most of the apple'. Below these two examples are two sentences: 'Most of the apples were rotten. 大部分苹果是烂的.' and 'Most of the apple was eaten by a rat. 这个苹果的大半被老鼠吃掉了.'

(2) “the + 形容词 (或分词)” 指一类人，如：the rich (富人), the living (活着的人), the wounded (伤者) 作主语时，谓语动词用复数。如：

The sick have been cured and the lost have been found.

The rich are eager to help the poor.

The wounded have been taken good care of .

The living have to cheer up and continue to live.

(3) 用 *and* 连接的成对名词习惯上被看做一个整体时，如：bread and butter(面包加黄油), knife and fork(刀叉)等作主语时，谓语动词用单数。如：

Bread and butter is usually my breakfast.



The illustration shows a man in a white shirt and red tie, holding his head with both hands. In front of him is a bottle of whisky and a glass of whisky and soda. To the right of the illustration is the text: 'Whisky and soda is always his favourite drink. 威士忌酒加苏打水是他最喜爱的饮料.'

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

(4) 表示时间、金钱、距离、度量等的名词作 主语，尽管是复数形式，它们作为一个单一的概念时，其谓语动词用单数形式。如：

One million dollars is a lot of money.

Ten miles is a long distance.

Two years is enough to learn a foreign language.

Two weeks\_\_ enough for me to finish the task.

### 3. 就近一致

(1) 由 here, there, where 以及状语从句提前构成的倒装句中，(有时主语不止一个时)谓语与靠近它的主语保持一致。如：

Here comes the bus.

There is a pen, two books and three pencils on the desk.  
=There are two books, a pen and three pencils on the desk.

On top of the mountain stands a tower.

Where is your mother?

Where are your friends?

(2) 由连词 or, either ... or, neither ... nor, not only ... but also, not ... but 等连接的并列主语，谓语动词与靠近它的主语 保持一致。如：

Neither the students nor the teacher knows anything about it.

变式练习：Neither the teacher nor the students know anything about it.

Neither the students nor the teacher as well as his children\_\_knows\_\_(know)anything about it.

He or you have taken my pen.

Not only Tom but I am satisfied with the result.

Not only they but also we are interested in the film.

作业与练习

1. I, who \_\_\_\_ your friend, will try my best to help you with your English.  
A. am                      B. is                      C. are                      D. be
2. The rich \_\_\_\_ not always happy.  
A. are                      B. is                      C. has                      D. have
3. Neither Tom nor Jack and I \_\_\_\_ his students.  
A. are                      B. am                      C. is                      D. was
4. Mary as well as her sisters \_\_\_\_ Chinese in China.  
A. are studying              B. have studied              C. studies                      D. study
5. Neither my father nor I \_\_\_\_ at home.  
A. am                      B. is                      C. are                      D. be
6. Not only my brother but also I \_\_\_\_ good at painting. Both of us \_\_\_\_ good painters.,  
A. are; are                      B. am; am                      C. am; are                      D. is; is
7. Every' boy and every girl \_\_\_\_ to attend the evening party.  
A. wish                      B. wishes                      C. is like                      D. like
8. Over 80 percent of the population of China \_\_\_\_ peasants.  
A. was                      B. is                      C. would be                      D. are
9. The population of China \_\_\_\_ larger than that of .any other country in the world.  
A. is                      B. are                      C. has                      D. have
10. Every means \_\_\_\_ tried but without any result.  
A. have been                      B. is to be                      C. are to be                      D. has been
11. Alice, together with two boys, \_\_\_\_ for having broken the rule.  
A. was punished              B. punished                      C. were punished              D. being punished.
12. The League secretary and the monitor \_\_\_\_ asked to attend the .meeting this afternoon.

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

A.is                      B.was                      C.are                      D.is being

13. The great writer and professor\_\_\_\_\_.

- A. is an old man                      B. are both old men  
C. is an old man and a young man      D. were two Chinese

14. There \_\_\_\_\_ a pen, two pencils and three books on the desk.

- A.are                      B.is                      C.has                      D.have

15. A large number of students in our class\_\_\_\_\_ girls.

- A. are                      B. was                      C. is                      D. be

16. The number of deer, mountain lions and wild roses \_\_\_\_\_ much if people leave things as they are.

- A. doesn' t change      B.don't change      C.change                      D.changed

17. The Arabian Nights \_\_\_\_\_ well known to the English.

- A. is                      B. are                      C. was                      D. were

18. Chairman Mao' s works \_\_\_\_\_ published.

- A. has been                      B.have been                      C.was                      D.is

19. A chemical works\_\_\_\_\_ built there.

- A. is to being                      B.have been                      C. were to                      D.has been

20. The Olympic Games \_\_\_\_\_ held every \_\_\_\_\_ years.

- A.is;four                      B.are;four                      C.is;five                      D.are;five

21 .The United States of America \_\_\_\_\_one of the most developed countries in the world.

- A.is                      B.are                      C.was                      D.were

22.He is the only one of die students *who* \_\_\_\_\_ elected.

- A. are                      B.have                      C.has                      D.is

23.This is one of the most iinteresting questions that \_\_\_\_\_ asked.

- A.have                      B.has                      C. have been                      D.has been

24. Many a man \_\_\_\_ come to help us.  
A. have                      B. has                      C. is                      D. are
25. "All \_\_\_\_ present and all \_\_\_\_ going on well," our monitor said.  
A. is;is                      B. are;are                      C. are;is                      D. is;are
26. The police \_\_\_\_ the murderer everywhere *when* he suddenly appeared in a theatre.  
A. is searching for                      B. were searching for  
C. are searching for                      D. were searching
27. Your trousers \_\_\_\_ dirty. You must have \_\_\_\_ washed.  
A. is;it                      B. are;it                      C. are;them                      D. is;them
28. This pair of trousers \_\_\_\_ too long for him.  
A. is                      B. be                      C. are                      D. were
29. One and a half bananas \_\_\_\_ left on the table.  
A. is                      B. are                      C. has                      D. have
30. Eight times eight \_\_\_\_ sixty - four.  
A. is                      B. are                      C. get                      D. equal
31. Ten minutes \_\_\_\_ an hour when one is waiting for a phone call.  
A. seems                      B. seem                      C. seemed                      D. seemes
32. \_\_\_\_ of the money \_\_\_\_ run out.  
A. Three-fifth; has                      B. Three-fifth; has been  
C. Three-fifths; has                      D. Three-fifths; have
33. The whole class \_\_\_\_ the teacher attentively.  
A. are listening to                      B. is listening to  
C. are listening                      D. is listening
34. I have finished a large part of the book, the rest of which \_\_\_\_ more difficult.  
A. is                      B. are                      C. was                      D. were

35. Between the two rows of trees \_\_\_\_ the teaching building.  
A. stand                      B. stands                      C. standing                      D. are
36. Large quantities of water \_\_\_\_ for irrigation.  
A. is needed                      B. has -needed                      C. are needed                      D. need
37. That they were wrong in these matters \_\_\_\_ now clear to us all.  
A. is                      B. was                      C. are                      D. all
38. What we need \_\_\_\_ good textbooks.  
A. is                      B. are                      C. have                      D. has
39. What you said just now \_\_\_\_ the matter we are discussing.  
A. have something to at                      B. has something to do with  
C. had something to do with                      D. has been something to do with
40. More than one member \_\_\_\_ against the plan.  
A. is                      B. are                      C. has                      D. have
41. When and where to build the new factory \_\_\_\_ yet.  
A. has not decided                      B. is not decided  
C. are not decided                      D. have not decided
42. Half of the fruit \_\_\_\_ bad.  
A. are                      B. has                      C. is                      D. have
43. \_\_\_\_ either of your parents come to see you recently?  
A. Have                      B. Had                      C. Has                      D. Is
44. Mathematics \_\_\_\_ the language of science.  
A. are                      B. are going to be                      C. is                      D. is to be
45. My family \_\_\_\_ small.  
A. is                      B. were                      C. are                      D. makes
46. The following \_\_\_\_ some other examples.  
A. are                      B. is                      C. was                      D. were

47. They both have some friends; but his \_\_\_\_ more active.  
A. is                      B. will be                      C. was                      D. are
48. Both rice and wheat \_\_\_\_ grown in that country.  
A. is                      B. are                      C. was                      D. has
49. Early to bed and early to rise \_\_\_\_ a good habit.  
A. are                      B. is                      C. were                      D. was
50. To play basketball and to go swimming \_\_\_\_ useful for character-training.  
A. was                      B. is                      C. are                      D. were

### 答案与解析

1. A. am  
主语是"I"，谓语动词用"am"。
2. A. are  
"The rich"指一类人（富人），谓语动词用复数形式"are"。
3. A. are  
"Neither...nor..."连接多个主语时，谓语动词与最近的主语一致。"Jack and I"是复数，用"are"。
4. C. studies  
主语是"Mary"，"as well as her sisters"是附加成分，不影响主谓一致，谓语用单数"studies"。
5. A. am  
"Neither...nor..."结构中，谓语动词与最近的主语"I"一致，用"am"。
6. C. am; are  
"Not only...but also..."结构中，谓语动词与最近的主语"I"一致，用"am"；第二空主语是"Both of us"，用"are"。
7. B. wishes  
"Every...and every..."结构的主语是单数，谓语动词用单数"wishes"。
8. D. are  
"population"指具体的人时，谓语动词用复数"are"。
9. A. is  
"population"指整体时，谓语动词用单数"is"。
10. D. has been  
"means"（方法）单复数同形，此处指"每一种方法"，用单数"has been"。
11. A. was punished  
主语是"Alice"，附加成分"together with..."不影响主谓一致，谓语用单数"was punished"。
12. C. are  
"The League secretary and the monitor"指两个人（书记和班长），谓语用复数"are"。
13. A. is an old man  
"The great writer and professor"指同一个人（作家兼教授），谓语用单数"is"。

14. B. is  
There be 结构中，谓语动词与最近的主语"a pen"一致，用单数"is"。
15. A. are  
"A large number of students"指复数，谓语用"are"。
16. A. doesn't change  
"The number of..."作主语时，谓语动词用单数"doesn't change"。
17. A. is  
"The Arabian Nights"（《天方夜谭》）是书名，谓语用单数"is"。
18. B. have been  
"Works"（著作）是复数，谓语用"have been"。
19. D. has been  
"A chemical works"（化工厂）是单数，谓语用"has been"。
20. B. are; four  
"The Olympic Games"是复数，谓语用"are"；奥运会每四年举办一次。
21. A. is  
"The United States"（美国）是单数国家名称，谓语用"is"。
22. D. is  
"the only one"是主语核心，定语从句的谓语动词与"one"一致，用单数"is"。
23. C. have been  
"one of the most interesting questions that..."中，定语从句的谓语动词与"questions"一致，用复数"have been"。
24. B. has  
"Many a man"（许多人）是单数意义，谓语用"has"。
25. C. are; is  
第一个"all"指人（复数），用"are"；第二个"all"指情况（单数），用"is"。
26. B. were searching for  
"The police"（警察）是复数，谓语用"were searching for"。
27. C. are; them  
"trousers"是复数，谓语用"are"；代词用"them"。
28. A. is  
"This pair of trousers"是单数，谓语用"is"。
29. B. are  
"One and a half bananas"是复数意义，谓语用"are"。
30. A. is  
数学运算结果用单数"is"。
31. A. seems  
"Ten minutes"视为一个时间段，谓语用单数"seems"。
32. C. Three-fifths; has  
分数表达中，分子大于1时分母加"s"；"money"不可数，谓语用"has"。
33. A. are listening to  
"The whole class"指全班学生（复数），谓语用"are listening to"。
34. A. is  
"the rest"指不可数的剩余部分，谓语用"is"。
35. B. stands

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

主语是"the teaching building" (单数)，谓语用"stands"。

36. C. are needed

"Large quantities of..."后接不可数名词时，谓语用复数"are needed"。

37. A. is

主语是"That..."从句，谓语用单数"is"。

38. B. are

主语是"What we need" (需要的东西)，指复数意义，谓语用"are"。

39. B. has something to do with

主语是"What you said" (单数)，谓语用"has"。

40. A. is

"More than one member"是单数意义，谓语用"is"。

41. B. is not decided

主语是"When and where..." (单数意义)，谓语用"is not decided"。

42. C. is

"fruit"不可数，谓语用单数"is"。

43. C. Has

"either"是单数意义，谓语用"Has"。

44. C. is

"Mathematics" (数学) 是学科名，谓语用单数"is"。

45. A. is

"family"指家庭整体 (单数)，谓语用"is"。

46. A. are

"The following"指代复数"examples"，谓语用"are"。

47. D. are

"his"指"his friends" (复数)，谓语用"are"。

48. B. are

"Both...and..."连接两个主语，谓语用复数"are"。

49. B. is

"Early to bed and early to rise"视为一个习惯 (单数)，谓语用"is"。

50. C. are

两个不定式短语并列作主语，谓语用复数"are"。

## 十六课：强调、倒装

强调句是一种修辞，是人们为了表达自己的意思或情感而使用的一种形式。通过各种方式对句子中的某个部分进行强调，从而起到修辞的作用。英语常用的强调结构是 "It is (was) + 被强调部分 (主语、宾语或状语) + who (that) ..."

**it** 为先行词的强调结构 **It is/was + 强调部分+ that/who/whom + 其他成分**这个句型用来强调除谓语以外的各种句子成分，被强调部分必须放在 **it is / was** 后面，如果强调的部分是人，可以 **who/whom** 来代替 **that**。

例: They will have a meeting in the hall tomorrow.

强调主语: It is they that/who will have a meeting in the hall tomorrow.

it is+ (被强调部分) +that+照抄

it is they that will have a meeting in the hall tomorrow.

强调宾语: It is a meeting that they will have in the hall tomorrow.

强调地点状语: It is in the hall that they will have a meeting tomorrow.

强调时间状语: It is tomorrow that they will have a meeting in the hall.

一般疑问句的强调:

(1) Did you meet your brother at McDonald?

you met your brother at McDonald---it was your brother that you met at McDonald

--Was it your brother that you met at McDonald?

Was it your brother that you met at McDonald? (强调宾语)

(2) Has Tom borrowed your money recently?

Is it Tom that has borrowed your money recently? (强调主语)

特殊疑问句的强调:

(1) Where did you see her cellphone yesterday?

where you saw her cellphone yesterday.---

it was where that you saw her cellphone yesterday.

---where it was that you saw her cellphone yesterday.

Where was it that you saw her cellphone yesterday? (强调特殊疑问词 where)

(2) How will you go to visit her tomorrow?

---how you will go to visit her tomorrow

---it is how that you will go to visit her tomorrow

---how it is that you will go to visit her tomorrow

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

--How is it that you will go to visit her tomorrow?

How is it that you will go to visit her tomorrow? (强调特殊疑问词 how)

从句的强调

(1) I came home late **because it was raining hard**.

It was **because it was raining hard** that I came home late. (强调状语从句)

(2) **What you said** really made us sad.

It was **what you said** that really made us sad. (强调主语从句)

not until 结构的强调

It was not until it stopped that we got off the bus.

Not until it stopped did we get off the bus. (否定词置于句首，要引起句子部分倒装，此句型，前不倒后倒。强调该结构时 not until 不能分开)

## 1. 强调的其他表现形式

### 助动词 do 的强调作用

在行为动词作谓语的句子中，常用“do 或 did”助动词+ 谓语“动词原形”表示强调语气。

She did go to see him yesterday.

We do have four lessons in the morning.

用形容词 **very, only, single, such** 等修饰名词或形容词来加强语气

How dare you buy such expensive jewels? 你怎么敢买这么贵的宝石呢?

用 **ever, never, very, just** 等副词和 **badly, highly, really** 等带有 -ly 的副词来进行强调:

I really don't know what to do next. 我的确不知道下一步该怎么做。

用 **in the world, on earth, at all** 等介词短语可以表达更强的语气 (常用于疑问句) :

Where in the world could he be? 他到底会在哪儿?

用感叹句来表示强烈的感情，突出说话人的情感

How interesting a story it is! 这是一个多么有趣的故事啊!

用重复来表示强调

Why! Why! The cage is empty! 啊! 啊! 箱子是空的



### 倒装句

倒装分两类：全部倒装和部分倒装。全部倒装是将句子中的谓语动词全部置于主语之前。实义动词、情态动词或 be 动词放在主语之前。部分倒装是指将谓语的一部分如助动词或情态动词倒装至主语之前。如果句中的谓语没有助动词或情态动词，则需添加助动词 do, does 或 did, 并将其置于主语之前。

#### 1. 全部倒装的情况 主语+谓语-----谓语+主语

使用场合	例句	备注
(1)there 引导的存在句	There is a book in the bag. There came shouts for help from the river.	常见动词有 be, come, lie, happen, appear, seem, stand, exist, live, remain 等
(2)在 here, there, away, in, out, down, up, off, now, then 开头的句子里	Here comes the bus. There goes the train. In rushed the children. Now comes your turn.	谓语常是表示方位或位移的不及物动词 lie, live, sit, stand, be, come, go, run, rise 等。
(3)介词短语或方位词组作地点状语位于句首	Between the buildings stands a tall tree. South of the city lies a steel factory. From the village came a frightening sound.	主语是人称代词时，不倒装。如：Here we are. There he comes.
(4)代词 such 作表语, 意为“这样的人, 这样的物”, 应置于句首	Such were the facts. Such was Albert Einstein.	主谓一致
(5)平衡句子结构或使上下文衔接紧密	They reached a farmhouse, in front of which sat a small boy.	主谓一致

(1)there 引导的存在句	There is a book in the bag. There came shouts for help from the river.	常见动词有 be, come, lie, happen, appear, seem, stand, exist, live, remain 等
-----------------	---	---

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

A book is in the bag **there**.=**There** is a book in the bag

(2) 在 here, there, away, in, out, down, up, off, now, then 开头的句子里	Here comes the bus. There goes the train. In rushed the children. Now comes your turn.
---	---

the bus comes here= here comes the bus.

(3) 介词短语或方位词组作地点状语位于句首	Between the buildings stands a tall tree. South of the city lies a steel factory. From the village came a frightening sound.
------------------------	--

A tall tree stands between the buildings.= Between the buildings stands a tall tree.

## 2. 部分倒装的情况

使用场合	例句	备注
(1) so, neither, nor 开头的句子, 表示“也一样、也不”	I like sports, and so does my brother. If you go, so will I. He hasn't come, nor have his sisters. If you don't go, neither shall I	使用正确的助动词。当 so 表示对前句内容的肯定和附和时, 用自然语序。如: —Tom works hard. —So he does and so do you. (他的确很用功, 你也是。)
(2) 含有否定意义的副词(词组), 如: never, seldom, hardly, little, nowhere, by no means, at no time 等置于句首时	<b>Hardly</b> can I believe that. <b>Seldom</b> does he write to me. By no means shall we give up. Little did I know who he was.	little 作形容词, 修饰主语时, 仍用正常语序。如: Little Franz often played the piano.
(3) only 修饰状语(从句), 并置于句首时, <b>主句</b> 中要部分倒装	Only when the rain stopped did the	only 修饰主语时不倒装。如: Only he can do

	match start again.	it.
(4)not only...but (also)...连接两个分句, not only 置于句首	Not only should we study science, but also we should pay attention to politics.	not only 引导的部分要部分倒装, 但 but (also) 部分不倒装。若 not only...but (also)...连接两个主语, 句子不倒装
(5)Not until ...Hardly...when...No sooner...than...So...that...Such...that...	Not until yesterday did I realize what trouble he was in. Hardly had I entered the room when the telephone rang. So angry was he that he couldn't speak. Such great progress did he make that he was praised.	主倒从不倒, 即主句部分用倒装语序, 从句部分用陈述语序
(6)省略 if 的虚拟条件句, 将 were, had, should 移至主语前	Were he ( = If he were ) here now, I could ask him. Should he ( = If he should) come, tell him to ring me up.	若条件句中不含 were, had, should 则不宜倒装。
7)祝愿句	May you succeed!	
(8)as 或 though 引导让步状语从句引起的倒装。句型是: 表语/状语/动词原形 + as/though + 主语	Young as he is, he knows a lot. Much as I like it, I will not buy it. Try as he might, he could not find a job.	though 引导让步状语从句也可不倒装。 表语前的冠词要省略。 如: Hero as he is, he has some shortcomings.

### 作业与练习

1. Not until I began to work \_\_\_\_ how much time I had wasted.  
A. didn' t I realize      B. did I realize      C. I didn' t realize      D. I realized
2. Only by practising a few hours every day \_\_\_\_ be able to master the language.  
A. you can      B. can you      C. you will      D. will you
3. If you don' t go, neither \_\_\_\_.  
A. shall I      B. do I      C. I do      D. I shall
4. No sooner \_\_\_\_ to the station \_\_\_\_ the train left.  
A. had I got, when      B. I had got, than      C. had I got, than      D. did I get, when
5. ---- Your father is very strict with you. ---- \_\_\_\_\_. He never lets off a single mistake of ours  
A. So he is      B. So is he      C. He is so      D. So does he
6. \_\_\_\_ today, he would get there by Sunday.  
A. Would he leave      B. Was he leaving      C. Were he to leave      D. If he leave
7. Never in my life \_\_\_\_ such a thing.      A. I have heard or have seen  
B. have I heard or seen      C. I have heard or seen      D. did I hear or see
8. ---- Here \_\_\_\_! Where is Xiao Liu?      ---- There \_\_\_\_.  
A. comes the bus, is he      B. comes the bus, he is      C. the bus comes, is he      D. the bus comes, he is
9. \_\_\_\_ , I will not buy it.  
A. Much as do I like it      B. As much I like it      C. Much as I like it      D. As I like it much
10. ---- I like football. I don' t like volleyball. ---- \_\_\_\_.  
A. So do I      B. Neither do I      C. So it is with me      D. So is it with me
11. \_\_\_\_ the expense, I \_\_\_\_ to Italy.  
A. If it were not, go      B. Were it not for, would go  
C. Weren't it for, will go      D. If it hadn't been, would have gone
12. So \_\_\_\_ in the darkness that he didn' t dare to move an inch.  
A. he was frightened      B. was he frightened      C. frightened he was      D.

frightened was he

13.—In modern times, girls like beautiful clothes.

—Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ and boys. After all, our life has greatly improved.

- A. so do they; so do you                      B. so they do; so you do  
C. so do they; so you do                      D. so they do; so do you

14.—You have an English class every day except Sunday. --- \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. So we have    B. So we do    C. So have we    D. So do we

15.I wonder if your wife will go to the ball. If your wife \_\_\_\_\_, so \_\_\_\_\_ mine.

- A. does; will    B. will; does    C. will; would    D. does; do

16. Only after I read the text over again \_\_\_\_\_ its main idea.

- A. that I knew    B. did I know    C. I could know    D. I did know

17.—You seem to have learned all the English words by heart.

- A. So I do              B. So do I                      C. So I have              D. So have I

18. —I seldom watch TV, but listen to the radio a lot.

- A. So do I    B. Neither do I    C. I'm the same    D. So it is with me

19. So excited \_\_\_\_\_ that he couldn't say a word.

- A. he seemed              B. did he seem              C. was he seeming              D. he did look

20. Jimmy was so nervous not a single word \_\_\_\_\_ down in the dictation.

- A. he wrote              B. he was written              C. did he write              D. was he written

21. Little \_\_\_\_\_ when I took the trip where it would lead me.

- A. have I known              B. had I known              C. do I know              D. did I know

22. —Have you ever seen anything like that before?              — \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. No, I never have seen anything like that before  
B. No, never I have seen anything like that before  
C. No, never have I seen anything like that before  
D. No, I have seen anything like that before never

23. \_\_\_\_\_, I would accept the invitation and go to the party.

- A. Were I you    B. Was I you    C. Had I been you    D. Would I be you

24. You should work less \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. and neither should I              B. and so should I              C. and nor should I              D. and so I should

25. \_\_\_\_\_ and caught the mouse.  
A. Up the cat jumped      B. The cat up jumped      C. Up jumped the cat      D. Jumped up the cat
26. Not only \_\_\_\_\_ a promise, but also he kept it.  
A. did he make      B. he made      C. does he make      D. has he made
27. His uncle is a worker and has been working in the factory for more than ten years. \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. So is his aunt      B. So has his aunt      C. So his aunt does      D. So it is with his aunt
28. Not once \_\_\_\_\_ their plan.  
A. did they change      B. they changed      C. changed they      D. they did change
- 29.—Do you know Jim quarreled with his brother?      —I don't know, and \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. nor don't I care      B. nor do I care      C. I don't care neither      D. I don't care also
30. Not until he arrived home \_\_\_\_\_ he find that this wallet had been stolen.  
A. did      B. would      C. when      D. that
31. —This is one of the oldest trees in the world.      — \_\_\_\_\_ such a big tree.  
A. Never I have seen      B. I haven't never seen      C. Never have I seen      D. I have seen never
32. Nowhere else in the world \_\_\_\_\_ cheaper tailoring than in Hong Kong.  
A. a tourist can find      B. can a tourist find      C. a tourist will find      D. a tourist has found
33. \_\_\_\_\_ succeed in doing anything.  
A. Only by working hard we can      B. By only working hard we can  
C. Only we can by working hard      D. Only by working hard can we
34. \_\_\_\_\_ that we all went out, lying in the sun.  
A. So fine was the weather      B. So was the fine weather  
C. The weather was so fine was      D. So the weather was fine
35. \_\_\_\_\_ a nice man \_\_\_\_\_ that we all believe him.  
A. So; did he seem      B. So; he seemed      C. Such; he seemed      D. Such; did he seem
36. —You seem to be an actor.      — \_\_\_\_\_. I have played many parts in a lot of films.  
A. So do I      B. So am I      C. So I do      D. So I am

37. Not only \_\_\_\_ working hard, but also \_\_\_\_ very polite.  
A. the boy is; he is      B. is the boy; he is      C. the boy is; is he      D. is the boy; is he
38. \_\_\_\_, he never seems able to do the work beautifully.  
A. Try as he does      B. As he tries      C. Try as does he      D. As try he does
- 39.—I cannot see the picture well from here. — \_\_\_\_.  
A. Neither can t I      B. Neither I can      C. I can't neither      D. Neither can I
- 40.— You ought to have given them some advice      — \_\_\_\_, but who cared what I asked?  
A. So ought you      B. So I ought      C. So it was      D. So I did
41. So carelessly \_\_\_\_ that he almost killed himself.  
A. he drives      B. does he drive      C. did he drive      D. he drove
42. Little \_\_\_\_ about his own health though he was very ill.  
A. he cared      B. did he care      C. he cares      D. does he care
43. Well \_\_\_\_ know him and well \_\_\_\_ know me.  
A. I did; he did      B. did I; he did      C. did I; did he      D. I did; did he
44. No sooner \_\_\_\_ they rushed out into the street.  
A. did they hear the news than      B. did they hear the news when  
C. had they heard the news than      D. had they heard the news when
45. Little wonder \_\_\_\_ up their hands in dismay.  
A. have some thrown      B. some have thrown      C. thrown some have      D. have thrown some

### 答案与解析

1. B. did I realize

Not until 位于句首，主句需倒装: "did I realize".

2. D. will you

Only by... 状语提前，句子倒装: "will you be able...".

3. A. shall I

neither 表示“也不”，需倒装: "neither shall I".

4. C. had I got, than

No sooner...than... 固定搭配，且"No sooner"提前需倒装: "had I got".

5. A. So he is

"So + 主语 + 助动词" 表示赞同 (“确实如此”)，此处用"So he is" (他确实严格)。

6. C. Were he to leave

虚拟条件句省略 if 时，需倒装: "Were he to leave" = "If he were to leave".

7. B. have I heard or seen

Never 提前，句子倒装: "have I heard or seen".

8. B. comes the bus, he is

方位副词 (here/there) 提前，主语为名词时需倒装: "comes the bus"; 主语为代词时不倒装: "he is".

9. C. Much as I like it

让步状语从句倒装结构: "Much as I like it" = "Although I like it much".

10. C. So it is with me

当前句包含并列的肯定和否定时，用 "So it is with me" (我也是如此)。

11. B. Were it not for, would go

虚拟条件句省略 if，倒装: "Were it not for..." = "If it were not for..."。

12. D. frightened was he

So...that... 结构中，"So + 形容词" 提前时需倒装: "frightened was he".

13. D. so they do; so do you

第一空表示赞同 ("确实如此"): "so they do"; 第二空表示 "男孩也是": "so do you".

14. B. So we do

表示赞同 ("我们确实如此")，用 "So we do".

15. A. does; will

第一空用 "does" 代替 "goes"; 第二空表示 "我的妻子也会"，用 "so will mine".

16. B. did I know

Only after... 状语提前，主句倒装: "did I know".

17. A. So I do

表示赞同 ("我确实如此")，用 "So I do".

18. D. So it is with me

当前句包含否定和肯定时，用 "So it is with me".

19. B. did he seem

So...that... 结构中，"So + 形容词" 提前时倒装: "did he seem".

20. C. did he write

not a single word 为否定意义，句子倒装: "did he write".

21. D. did I know

Little 为否定词提前，句子倒装: "did I know".

22. C. No, never have I seen...

never 提前，倒装: "never have I seen".

23. A. Were I you

虚拟条件句省略 if，倒装: "Were I you" = "If I were you".

24. B. and so should I

表示 "我也应该"，用 "so should I".

25. C. Up jumped the cat

方位副词 (up) 提前，主语为名词时需倒装: "Up jumped the cat".

26. A. did he make

Not only 提前，句子倒装: "did he make".

27. D. So it is with his aunt

前句包含多种时态和谓语动词时，用 "So it is with..."。

28. A. did they change

Not once 为否定词提前，句子倒装: "did they change"。

29. B. nor do I care

nor 表示“也不”，需倒装: "nor do I care"。

30. A. did

Not until... 提前，主句倒装: "did he find"。

31. C. Never have I seen

Never 提前，句子倒装: "Never have I seen"。

32. B. can a tourist find

Nowhere 为否定词提前，句子倒装: "can a tourist find"。

33. D. Only by working hard can we

Only by... 状语提前，句子倒装: "can we succeed"。

34. A. So fine was the weather

So...that... 结构中，"So + 形容词" 提前时倒装: "So fine was the weather"。

35. D. Such; did he seem

Such 修饰名词短语，后接倒装: "did he seem"。

36. D. So I am

表示赞同 (“我确实是”)，用 "So I am"。

37. B. is the boy; he is

Not only 提前，第一分句倒装: "is the boy"; 第二分句不倒装。

38. A. Try as he does

让步状语从句倒装: "Try as he does" = "Although he tries"。

39. D. Neither can I

Neither 表示“我也不”，需倒装: "Neither can I"。

40. D. So I did

表示“我确实做了”，用 "So I did"。

41. C. did he drive

So...that... 结构中，"So + 副词" 提前时倒装: "did he drive"。

42. B. did he care

Little 为否定词提前，句子倒装: "did he care"。

43. C. did I; did he

Well 提前，两个分句均需倒装: "did I know; did he know"。

44. C. had they heard the news than

No sooner...than... 固定搭配，且 "No sooner" 提前需倒装: "had they heard"。

45. B. some have thrown

Little wonder 为固定短语，主语为 "some"，无需倒装。

总结:

1. 否定词 (never, little, not until 等) 或部分状语 (only, so, such 等) 提前时，句子需部分倒装。
2. 表示赞同用 "So + 主语 + 助动词" (如: So I do)。
3. 表示“某人也是”用 "So + 助动词 + 主语" (如: So do I)。

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

“非谓语动词是在指句子中，不充当谓语的动词。和从句一样，非谓语动词是以动词的变化型(不定式，动名词和分词)来替代句子中成分

以 do 为例:

不定式: to +V 原型: to do

动名词: V-ing

分词: 1. 现在分词 V-ing; 2. 过去分词: done

过去分词: 第一次见面: 完成时 have/has/had+过去分词

第二次见面: 被动语态 be+过去分词

第三次见面: 非谓语动词: done

过去式: 仅见了一面: 过去时: did

## 十七课: 非谓语动词

### 动词不定式

动词不定式的基本形式

	主动语态	被动语态
一般式	To do	To be done
进行式	To be doing	
完成式	To have done	To have been done

动词不定式可以充当的成分:

1. 主语 To do that sort of thing is foolish.

It is foolish to do that sort of thing.

不定式作主语时, 常用 it 做形式主语

To help each other is good=it is good to help each other.

特殊句型:

it is + adj. / n/ +(for/ of sb.) + to do sth .

It is good **of** you to help me with my English.

你真好, 帮助我学英语。(强调 you 的特征=You are good to help me.)

It is good **for** you to give up smoking.

强调的是 give up smoking 这一行为= For you to give up smoking is good.)

## 2. 宾语 I want to see you this evening.

我想要你= I want you.

我想要看见了=I want **to see** you.

作及物动词的宾语，如：She wishes to be a musician.;

作某些形容词的宾语：可以有动词不定式为宾语的形容词一般有 glad, sorry, afraid, pleased, determined, willing, eager, anxious, ready, sure 等，

如：I am determined to give up smoking.;

动词不定式一般不作介词的宾语，但动词不定式之前如有疑问词时，就可作介词的宾语，

如：Can you give us some advice **on what to do** next?

注：不定式动词在介词 **but, except** 后面时，如果这些介词之前有行为动词 **do** 的各种形式，那么，这些介词后的不定式不带 **to**，否则要带 **to**

She could **do** nothing but cry.

I have no choice but to go.

## 3. 表语 All you have to do **is to finish** it quickly.

be to do=表将来？不定式做表语？

动词不定式在系动词 **be** 之后作表语，与表示将来时的 **be + 动词不定式** 结构有所区别，  
如：

Our **plan** is **to set up** another middle school for the peasants' children.

我们的计划是给农民子弟再成立一所中学。

(句中的谓语动词为 **is**，动词不定式 **to set up**... 为表语，主语为 **plan**，但 **plan** 并不是动词不定式的逻辑主语，即动词不定式 **to set up** 所表示的动作不是主语 **plan** 产生的。)

**We** are to set up another middle school for the peasants' children.

我们将为农民的子弟再成立一所中学。(句中的 **are to set up** 整个结构为句中谓语，主语为 **we**，同时也是动词不定式 **to set up** 所表示的动作的逻辑主语，即动词不定式 **to set up** 所表示的动作是由 **we** 产生的)。

## 4. 定语 We found a house to live in.

动词不定式作定语时，须位于被其修饰的名词或代词之后，如：Is this the best way to help him? 和定语用的动词不定式如果是不及物动词，不定式后面就要用必要的介词，如：He is the man to depend on.

如果被不定式修饰的名词为 place, time, way, 不定式后面的介词，习惯上可以省去，如：The old man is looking for a quiet place to live.

要求 不定式做定语

翻译：他是唯一可以信任的人。

he is the only man to trust.

我们找到了一个可以住的房子。

We found a house to live in.

#### 5. 状语 She came here to study English.

To study English, she came here.

动词不定式可以作下列的状语：

目的状语： Every morning he gets up very early to read English. 为了强调不定式表示目的的作用，可在不定式前加 in order to 或 so as to (以便或为了)，但应注意 in order to 位于句首或句中均可，而 so as to 不能位于句首，如： She reads China Daily every day in order to (so as to) improve her English. 将表示目的的不定式置于句首，也可强调目的的作用，如： To master a foreign language, one must work hard at it.

#### 6. 宾补 I warned the patient not to eat cold water after the operation.

作宾语补足语，如： Tell the children not to play on the street. 如果句中的谓语动词为 have, make, let 等，作宾语补足语的动词不定式须将 to 省去，

如： I let a little girl run across the street.

我昨天让我妹妹写作业。

I asked my sister to do her homework yesterday.

I had my sister do her homework yesterday.

动词不定式的否定式：动词不定式的否定式是由 not + 动词不定式构成，如： It's wrong of you not to attend the meeting.

注意不定式的时态和语态：

1. 如果谓语表示的动作(情况)发生时，不定式表示的动作正在进行，这时不定式就要用进行式。

Tom and Martin pretended \_\_\_\_\_ their homework when the teacher came into the classroom.

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

(假装正在做作业)

to be doing

2. 如果不定式的动作发生在谓语动词之前，要用完成式。

She is said \_\_\_\_\_thirty novels this year.

据说她已读了 30 本小说。

to have read

3. 当不定式的逻辑上的主语是这不定式所表示的动作的承受者时，不定式一般要用被动形式。不定式的被动形式有两种：一般式和完成式。

It is an honor for me \_\_\_\_to be invited\_\_\_\_to your party. (invite)

invite---I -----被动 to invite-----to be invited

找出非谓语动词何其逻辑主语的主被动选择 to do 或者 to be done

After graduation, he asked \_\_\_\_\_to work in the countryside. (sent)

to be sent

This novel was said \_\_\_\_\_into French. (translate)

to be translated----to have been translated-

He was the first student\_\_\_\_\_by The teacher. (punish)

to be punished-----to have been punished

## 动词 ing

-ing 形式：动词的-ing 形式也是一种非谓语动词。-ing 形式仍保留有动词的特征，可以带有其所需要的宾语或状语而构成-ing 短语。

1、-ing 的形式：-ing 有一般式和完成式。及物动词的-ing 还有主动语态和被动语态，

而不及物动词的-ing 则没有被动语态。现在以不及物动词 **make** 和不及物动词 **go** 为例，将其 -ing 各种形式列表如下：

动词 语态 形式	及物动词 <b>make</b>		不及物动词 <b>go</b>
	主动语态	被动语态	主动语态
一般式	<b>making</b>	<b>being made</b>	<b>going</b>
完成式	<b>having made</b>	<b>having been made</b>	<b>having gone</b>

## 2、-ing 形式的基本用法。

(1) **作主语**：Seeing is believing.百闻不如一见。Talking is easier than doing. 说的容易做的难。-ing 作主语时，如果其结构较长，可用 it 作形式主语，而将作主语的-ing 后置。  
如：It' s no use waiting here.

(2) **作表语**：Her job is washing and cooking.  
My hobby is collecting stamps.

### (3) 作宾语：

作及物动词的宾语。She likes drawing very much.

作某些短语动词的宾语。Mary is thinking of going back to New York.;

do+限定词 (my, some, any, the 等) + -ing, 表示“做…事”之意,

如：We often do our cleaning on Saturday afternoon.

Will you do any shopping on Saturday this afternoon?

作介词的宾语：Her sister is good at learning physics.;

作形容词 worth, busy 等的宾语：This book is well worth reading. -ing 作宾语带有宾语补足语时，要用 it 作为形式宾语，而将作宾语的-ing 后置，

如：We found it no good talking like that.

Do you think it necessary trying again?

Trying again is necessary---it is necessary trying again.

Do you think it necessary trying again?

注：动名词作宾语还可以有自己的逻辑主语

Do you mind **my** reading your paper?=宾语

read----I

reading---n---my reading

Do you mind **me** reading your paper?=宾补

翻译：汤姆去那里解决了很多问题。

Tom's going there **solved** a lot of problems. (Tom)

=That Tom went there **solved** a lot of problems.

Please excuse my interrupting you.

They insisted on my staying there for supper.

Do you think there will be any chance of my seeing him again?

**注意：**

动名词和不定式作宾语的区别

1. 有几个动词，之后既可以跟不定式，又可以跟动名词作宾语，意思区别不是太大；例：

**hate, begin, start, prefer, love, like**

这些动词后可跟不定式和 v-ing 形式作宾语，意义差别不大。

v-ing 形式表示经常性、概括性的动作，不定式表示具体的、特定的某一次动作。如  
She likes singing, but she doesn't like to sing today

2. 有几个动词，之后既可以跟不定式，又可以跟动名词作宾语，意思区别很大例：

**try, remember, forget, mean, go on, stop, regret**

remember to do	记得去做；	remember doing	记得做过
forget to do	忘记去做；	forget doing	忘记做过了
regret to do	遗憾去做；	regret doing	后悔做过
try to do	设法去做；	try doing	试着做
go on to do	接着做另一件事	go on doing	继续做同一件事
mean to do	打算做；	mean doing	意味着做
stop to do	停下来去做；	stop doing	停止做

3. 有些动词之后只能跟动名词作宾语

例：

**resist, mind, suggest, delay, keep on, look forward to, enjoy, include, appreciate, imagine, practise, finish, succeed in, consider, can't help, miss**

(4) 作定语：The sleeping child is only five years old. Do you know the man standing at the gate? 注：-ing 形式作定语用时，如果-ing 只是一个单词，就位于其修饰的名词之前，如果是-ing 短语，就位于其修饰的名词之后，-ing 作定语时，被-ing 所修饰的名词就是该-ing 的逻辑主语。另外，-ing 作定语用时，其动作和句子谓语动词所表示的动作是同时进行的，如果不是同时进行的，就不能用-ing 作定语，要使用定语从句，如：The girl who wrote a letter there yesterday can speak English very well.

注：动词-ed 形式作定语表示动作已完成，而动词-ing 形式作定语表示动词正在进行。

boiled water	开水	boiling water	正沸腾的水
fallen leaves	落叶	falling leaves	正在飘落的叶子
changed condition	改变了的情况	changing condition	变化着的情况
developed countries	发达国家	developing countries	发展中国家

(5) 作宾语补足语：We can see steam rising from the wet clothes. 注：当-ing 在复合宾语中作宾语补足语用时，句中宾语就是这个-ing 的逻辑主语，可以带有这种复合宾语的动词有 see, watch, hear, observe, feel, find, have, keep 等。

### (6) 作状语:

- ①时间状语: Seeing Tom, I couldn't help thinking of his brother. 分词在句中作时间状语时, 其前一般可加 when 或 while, 如: When crossing street, you must be careful.
- ②原因状语: Being ill, he didn't go to school yesterday.
- ③方式或伴随状语: Mary stood at the school gate waiting for Betty.

注: 分词作状语可以表示时间, 条件, 原因, 结果, 伴随或方式, 及独立成分。

分词作状语的首要条件是分词的逻辑主语是句子的主语, 分词与逻辑主语的关系是主动的, 用现在分词, 反之, 用过去分词

例: **Hearing** the news, he couldn't help laughing. (时间)  
=when he heard the news, he couldn't help laughing.

Given enough time, I can do it better (条件)  
=if I was given enough time, I can do it better.

1、主动语态-ing 完成式的基本用法。主动语态-ing 完成式所表示的动作发生在句中谓语动词所表示的动作之前, 一般在句中作时间或原因状语用。句中的主语是它的逻辑主语, 并且是它所表示的动作用的执行者, 如: Having answered the letter, she went on to read an English novel.

2、被动语态-ing 一般式的基本用法。被动语态-ing 一般式所表示的动作是一个正在进行中的被动动作, 而且这个被动动作也是和句中谓语所表示的动作同时发生的。它一般在句中作定语或状语用。如: The truck being repaired there is ours.

3、-ing 形式与动词不定式在句中作状语的区别。-ing 形式在句中作状语表示时间、原因、方式或伴随情况, 而动词不定式一般式在句中作状语时, 一般是作目的或结果状语, 如: Not receiving his letter, I wrote to him again./ I looked into the window to see what was going on inside.

## 过去分词

**过去分词的基本用法:** 过去分词只有一种形式, 也没有主动语态, 它所表示的动作是一个被动的或是已完成的动作。过去分词在句中也可用作定语、表语、宾语或状语等成分。过去分词在句中作某种成分时, 其逻辑主语一般为该分词所表示的动作用的承受者, 如:

(1) **作定语:** 过去分词作定语时, 如果这个分词是一个单词, 就位于其修饰的名词之前, 如果是分词短语, 就位于其修饰的名词之后。被过去分词所修饰的名词, 就是该分词的逻辑

主语，如：The stolen car **was found** by the police last week.

(1) **作表语**：过去分词作表语时，表示其逻辑主语所处的状态，其逻辑主语就是句中的主语，如：The glass is broken.这个玻璃杯是破的。注：过去分词作表语时，和动词的被动语态结构相似，但两者表达的意义不同，

如：The glass was broken by my little brother.这个玻璃杯是被我小弟弟打破的。

作表语用的过去分词在许多词典中已列为形容词，如：crowded, devoted, discouraged, done, dressed, drunk, experienced, frightened, gone, hurt, interested, killed, known, learned, lost, pleased, satisfied, shut, surprised, tired, undressed, worried, astonished, broken, completed, covered 等。

(3) **作宾语补足语**：过去分词作宾语补足语时，句中的宾语就是其逻辑主语，如：When I opened the door, I found the ground covered by fallen leaves.注：动词 have 后的复合宾语中，宾语补足语如为过去分词，常表示该分词所表示的动作是由别人来执行的而不是句中主语自己来执行的，如：I had my bike repaired yesterday. 昨天我（找别人）把我的自行车给修了。

We can see steam **rising** from the wet clothes.

I found the ground **covered** by fallen leaves.

(4) **作状语**：过去分词作状语时，相当于一个状语从句，该结构的逻辑主语一般都是主句的主语，是过去分词所表示意义的逻辑宾语。为了使作状语的过去分词意义更加明确，常在分词前加 when, if, while, though, as 等连词，如：Seen from the hill/ When seen from the hill, our town looks beautiful.; Given more time/ If given more time, we could have done it better. (we 是该结构的逻辑主语，是 give 的逻辑宾语。)

分词作状语，逻辑主语就是句子主语

\_\_Seen\_\_ from the space, **our school** looks small. (see)

\_\_Seeing\_\_ from the space, **we** find our school small. (see)

### 独立主格结构

所谓独立主格结构，分词的**逻辑主语不是句子主语**，而是有自己的逻辑主语时，叫独立主格结构。

例：Today \_\_\_\_ (be) Sunday, the library doesn't open.

being

There \_\_\_\_ (be) no buses, we had to walk home.

being

The signal \_\_\_\_ (give), the bus started.

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

given

Weather \_\_\_\_\_ ( permit ), we'll visit the Great Wall.

permitting

A teacher from England \_\_\_\_ ( teach ) us English, we're sure to learn it well.

teaching

特殊的独立结构:

有些非谓语形式已经为固定用语，用来表示说话人对说话内容所持的态度。

(1) 现在分词的独立结构:

judging from / by ...;

generally speaking ;

strictly speaking

(2) 不定式的独立结构:

to tell you the truth ;

to make things worse

to start / begin with

(2) 作连词的分词

considering (考虑到, 就...而言) ,

providing / provided ...假如

supposing (假如)

感官动词后做宾补的非谓语形式

感官动词: feel , see ,hear , watch ,notice

句型: 感官动词+sb + doing / do / done (分别表示正在发生, 全过程, 被动完成)

例: They know her very well. They had seen her \_\_\_\_\_ up from childhood.

A. grow

B . grew

C . was growing

D . to grow

The missing boy was last seen \_\_\_ near the river .

A. playing

B . To be playing

C. play

D. to play

Find + 宾语+ 宾补 (doing / done) ;

keep + 宾语+ doing

catch + sb + doing (撞见某人在做) ;

smell + sb + doing (察觉某人在做)

例: He looked around and caught a man\_\_\_\_\_his hand into the pocket of a passenger.

A. put

B . to be putting

C . to put

D . putting

我发现猫吃鸡肉。



1. I found the cat eating the chicken.
2. I found the chicken eaten by the cat.

1. ---- Can you ride a horse? ---- No, I never had the chance \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. for learning it      B. for learning how      C. how to learn it      D. to learn how
2. Paul said, "Give me a chair \_\_\_\_\_."  
A. to sit      B. sit      C. sit on      D. to sit on
3. I ran too fast \_\_\_\_\_ where I was going.  
A. to notice      B. for me to notice      C. to notice for me      D. and notice
4. ---- Have you enjoyed your visit here? ---- Yes, I'll be very sorry\_\_\_\_\_.  
A. for leaving      B. of leaving      C. to leave      D. with leaving
5. ---- I'll help you whenever you need me. ---- Good. I'd like \_\_\_\_\_me tomorrow.

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

- A. you helping    B. that you will help    C. you to help    D. that you help
6. ---- I didn't hear you come in last night.      ---- That's good. We tried \_\_\_\_\_ noisy.  
A. not be                      B. not to be                      C. to be not                      D. to not be
7. Because of air pollution being greatly reduced, this city is still \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. a good place which to be lived in                      B. lived as a good place  
C. a good place to live in                      D. living in as a good place
8. ---- Why was the official meeting called?      ---- \_\_\_\_\_ new officers.  
A. Select                      B. Selecting                      C. To select                      D. For selecting
9. ---- Where did he go?                      ---- He went to another store \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. to buy pencils                      B. for buying pencils                      C. buy pencils                      D. buying pencils
10. ---- My baby has a heart trouble.      ---- Did the doctor find it difficult \_\_\_\_\_ ?  
A. in treating                      B. treating                      C. for treating                      D. to treat

1-5 DDACC 6-10 BCCAD

1. Alien said that his trip was \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. interested                      B. interest                      C. interesting                      D. of interest
2. We can't understand \_\_\_\_\_ a decision until it is too late.  
A. him to postpone to make                      B. his postponing to make  
C. him to postpone making                      D. his postponing making
3. I couldn't understand \_\_\_\_\_ at the poor child.  
A. you to laugh                      B. you laugh                      C. why laugh                      D. you laughing
4. It's no use \_\_\_\_\_ with him. You might as well \_\_\_\_\_ with a stone wall.  
A. arguing, argue                      B. to argue, arguing                      C. arguing, arguing                      D. to argue, argue
5. It is no good \_\_\_\_\_ today's work for tomorrow.  
A. to leave                      B. leaving                      C. that you leave                      D. leave

6. The old man's \_\_\_\_\_ pity on the snake led to his own death.  
A. take                      B. taking                      C. being taken                      D. have
7. It's very kind \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ say so.  
A. of, to                      B. for, to                      C. to, to                      D. of, /
8. Some people's greatest pleasure is \_\_\_\_\_ .  
A. fishing                      B. to fish                      C. to be fish                      D. being fishing
9. Remember \_\_\_\_\_ the book, when you have finished it.  
A. putting back                      B. having put back                      C. to put back                      D. will put back
10. You didn't hear us come back last night. That's good. We tried \_\_\_\_\_ noisy.  
A. to not be                      B. not to be                      C. being not                      D. not being

1-5 CDDAB 6-10 BAACB

1. There is no question of \_\_\_\_\_ able to finish it himself.  
A. Tom was                      B. Tom's being                      C. Tom's be                      D. Tom is
2. The new shopping center \_\_\_\_\_ now will be put into use by the end of this year.  
A. built                      B. be built                      C. being built                      D. to be built
3. "Have you had supper?"                      "Not yet. The meal\_\_\_\_\_."  
A. are being cooked                      B. is being cooked                      C. is cooked                      D. are cooked
4. "I'm glad \_\_\_\_\_ you here in the hotel."                      "It's my great pleasure to have you \_\_\_\_\_ us."  
A. meeting, to                      B. to have met, with                      C. having met, among                      D. to meet, of

5. I'm afraid I can't make myself \_\_\_\_\_ in English.  
A. understanding      B. understand      C. to be understood      D. understood
6. Although in a hurry, Wilson \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. couldn't stop walking      B. couldn't help the stranger  
C. stopped to help the stranger      D. didn't answer the stranger
7. Janet is easy \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. for getting along with      B. by getting along with  
C. to get along with      D. got along with
8. Don't forget \_\_\_\_\_ the light when you leave.  
A. turn off      B. to turn off      C. turning off      D. turned off
9. The mother is very glad; her baby is beginning \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. understanding what she means      B. to understand that she meant  
C. to understand what she means      D. noticing what she means ,
10. Time \_\_\_\_\_, they'll come here to watch us \_\_\_\_\_ football.  
A. permitted, playing      B. permitted, to play      C. permitting, play      D. permitting, to play

参考答案:

1~5 BCBB D    6~10 CCBB C

## 十八课: 祈使句和省略

### 祈使句

表示请求、命令、劝告或建议的句子是祈使句。祈使句读时一般用降调，为使祈使句听起来比较婉转，可用低升调，祈使句句末用句号或感叹号。祈使句有两种类型：第二人称为主语的祈使句和第一、三人称为主语的祈使句。每种类型又有肯定形式和否定形式。

(1)第二人称为主语的祈使句

Be seated, please. 请坐。    you are seated. = Be seated

请安静      you are quiet = Be quiet, please.

Be sure to come on time. 请务必按时来。

翻译: 请你及时完成作业 (祈使句)

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

you are sure to finish homework in time.  
Please be sure to finish homework in time.  
Be sure to finish homework in time, please.

第二人称主语通常不表示出来，有时为了强调指明向谁提出要求或发出命令，主语也可表示出来，这时主语须重读。有时强调第二人称主语可表示恼怒、急躁等情绪。

Jack, close the window! 杰克，关上窗户!  
You **be** quiet for a moment. 请你安静一会儿。

表示强调是在谓语动词前面加 do。  
Do be careful next time. 下次请务必小心。

(2)第一、三人称为主语的祈使句通常以 let 开头

Let me admonish you, first of all, to go alone and to refuse the good models, even those who are sacred in the imagination of men. 我劝告你首先要走自己的路，不用任何所谓好榜样，甚至用不着那些人们想象中的圣人。

Let life be beautiful like summer flowers and death like autumn leaves.  
生如夏花之绚烂，死如秋叶之静美。

Let us try again. 让我们再试试。(不包括说话者)  
Let's have a rest. 咱们休息一会儿。(包括说话者)  
Don't let anyone disturb you. 不要让任何人打扰你。

第一人称为主语的祈使句可在 let 前面加 do 表示强调，第三人称为主语的祈使句不可以。  
Do let me have another try. 请务必让我再试试。  
祈使句的否定式是在句首加 don't 或 never。

Don't let the children make much noise. 不要让孩子发出大的噪声。  
Never tell anyone your password. 不要把你的密码告诉任何人。

(3)其他形式的祈使句

1)以 no 开始的禁止性祈使句

No entry. 禁止入内。  
No parking. 禁止停车。  
No smoking 禁止吸烟

2)固定短语

Out with it! 说出来吧。  
Beg pardon. 请原谅。  
Faster. 快点。

(4)使祈使语气更加婉转的方法

为了使祈使句听起来比较客气、婉转，除了用低升调外，还可以用下列方法：

1)加 please

Please give me a hand. 请帮我一下。

Lend me your dictionary, please.请把字典借给我用一下。

2)加 will you

Read the text, will you?读一下课文，好吗？

Come in and sit down, will you?进来坐下，好吗？

3)please 和 will you 同时运用

Be careful, please, will you?小心些，好吗？

Don't make noise, please, will you?不要制造噪音，好吗？

4)用 would you 则更加客气

Shut the window, would you?关上窗户，行吗？

Hurry up, would you?快点，好吗？

5)加 won't you、 can't you、 why don't you

Take it away, can't you?拿走，不行吗？

Turn off the radio, won't you?关闭收音机，好吗？

## 省略

(1)复合句的省略

1)状语从句由 although/though, as if, until, once, unless, when, whether, where while 等引导，且同时具备下列两个条件，即主句和从句的主语一致，或从句主语为 it,从句的主要动词是 be 的某种形式，则从句中的主语和 be 动词常可省略。

(be 的某种形式: be+doing、be+adj、be+done)

When the museum is completed, the museum will be open to the public next year.

When completed, the museum will be open to the public next year.

明年当博物馆竣工时,将会对公众开放。

He'll go to the seaside for his holiday if it is possible

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

从句省略形式：

He'll go to the seaside for his holiday if possible.(=. if it is possible.)

如果可能的话，他会去海边度假。

2)比较状语从句中的省略。

I'm taller than he.(=. than he is tall.)我比他高。

I'm taller than him.—动宾、介宾

I'm taller than he.

The higher the temperature, the greater the pressure(=.the temperature is, . the pressure is.)

温度越高，压力越大。

3)某些虚拟语气的句子可以省略 should。虚拟条件句有时可以省略 if,从句使用倒装。

I suggest that he study more English before going abroad.(=. that he should study.)

我建议他出国之前学习更多英语。

Were I you, I would go with her.(=If I were you,.)

如果我是你，我会和她一起去。

牛刀小试：完成下面句子，并将其倒装

If I had studied hard before, I \_\_\_\_\_ **now**. (取得好成绩) good grades

Had I studied hard before,I would get good grades now

4)宾语从句中的连接词 that 和限制性定语从句中作宾语的关系代词 that,which,whom 常可省略。

I think (that) you are wrong. 我认为你是错误的。

She is the woman(who/whom/that)we are talking about.

她就是我们正在谈论的那位女士。

### (2)并列句的省略

为使句子简洁，在无损句子完整的前提下常省略相同成分。

He often regards English as easy **and** (he often regards) French as difficult.

他经常认为英语简单、法语难。

I like eating chicken and ~~I like eating~~ beef.

I like eating beef and ~~I like~~ drinking orange juice.

I like playing basketball and KUN likes dancing.

I could have stayed home, but I didn't(stay home).

我原本可以待在家里,但是我没有。

### (3)(简单句)习惯省略

1)对话语境中前后省略。

—How are you?你好吗?

—(I'm) Fine.很好。

2)介词 in,from 等在搭配中的省略。

He spends his evening (in) studying Chinese.他晚上学习汉语。

They are busy (in) cleaning the room. 他们正忙着打扫房间。

We could stop them(from) moving the heavy box. 我们可以阻止他们挪动这个重箱子。

类似省略情况还有:

waste no time (in) doing sth.赶紧做某事

succeed (in) doing sth.成功地做了某事

have difficulty (in) doing sth.做某事有困难

have no trouble (in) doing sth.做某事很顺利

keep sb. (from) doing sth. 阻止某人做某事

prevent sb. (from) doing sth. 阻止某人做某事

3)省略不定式符号 **to**。不定式作使役动词 **make/let/have** 以及感官动词的宾语补足语时要省略 **to**,但该结构变成被动语态时 **to** 不能省略。

The boss made the workers work all day and all night. 老板让这些工人日夜工作。

The workers were made to work all day and all night. 工人们被迫日夜工作。

4) 在密切联系的语境中，为了避免重复，作宾语或宾语补足语的不定式只保留 **to**。

Don't touch anything unless your teacher tells you **to**.除非老师要求，否则不要碰任何东西。

—Did you invite him **to** the party?你邀请他参加聚会了吗?

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

—Yes, I'd tried to, but he refused to. 是的，我竭力邀请他，但是他拒绝了。

## 写句子的“三相之力”

由普通句子进化成难句，我们现有“三把斧”

### 1. 状语从句

结构：句子 1+ “引导词” + 句子 2

例：Because he was ill, he didn't go to school yesterday.  
Because today is Sunday, the library doesn't open.

### 2. 定语从句

结构：主句（先行词）+ 关系词+从句

例：That is my home which stands at the top of the mountain.  
which stands at the top of the mountain.

My brother, who lived in France for ages, now lives in Beijing.

My brother now lives in Beijing. My brother lived in France for ages

替换：My brother--who lived in France for ages

平移：一般是平移到先行词后面：

My brother, who lived in France for ages, now lives in Beijing.

### 3. 非谓语动词作状语/独立主格结构

难点：逻辑主语---非谓语动词---动词---发起者---逻辑主语

逻辑主语是句子主语，分为主动用现在分词，被动用过去分词

例：Seen from above, our school is very small.

Seeing from above, we find the school small.

逻辑主语不是句子的主语，则为独立主格结构，主动用现在分词，被动用过去分词

例：Weather permitting, we will go outing.

Signal given, the car moves fast.

“三相之力”之转化!

简单句 (同一个主语) : The teacher is giving a lecture now.  
The teacher just returned from England.

方法一: 定从---The teacher who is giving a lecture now just returned from England.  
The teacher is giving a lecture now.

代替: the teacher---who just returned from England

平移: The teacher,who just returned from England, is giving a lecture now.

方法二: 状从---The teacher is giving a lecture now as just returned from England.  
找到合适的“引导词” The teacher is giving a lecture now.

The teacher just returned from England.

连接

The teacher is giving a lecture now as just returned from England.

方法三: 非谓语---The teacher giving a lecture now just returned from England.

The teacher who is giving a lecture now just returned from England.

The teacher giving a lecture now just returned from England.

练习 1: :That is my house. My house stands at the top of the mountain.  
stand----standing

That is my house standing at the top of the mountain.

练习 2: My brother lives in Beijing now. My brother lived in France for ages.

My brother ,who lived in France for ages, lives in Beijing now .

My brother lives in Beijing now. My brother lived in France for ages.

My brother having lived in France for ages lives in Beijing now.

练习 3: I love the novels. The novel was written by an old man.

I love the novels written by an old man.

两个简单句有相同部分----非谓语/定语从句

简单句 (不同主语) : The guide led the way. **We had no trouble getting out of the forest.**

方法一: 定从---~~The guide led the way, which made us have no trouble getting out of the forest.~~

方法二: 状从---As the guide led the way, we had no trouble getting out of the forest.

The guide leading the way, **we had no trouble getting out of the forest.**

方法三: 非谓语---The guide leading the way, we had no trouble getting out of the forest.

两个简单句没有相同部分----非谓语/状语从句

练习 1: Time permits. We will answer your question after the discussion.

If time permits, we will answer your question after the discussion.

Time permitting, we will answer your question after the discussion.

练习 2: 翻译: 考试结束后, 我们会有暑假

After the test is finished, we will have our summer vacation.

The test finished, we will have our summer vacation.

Having finished the exams, **we** will have summer holidays.

练习 3: 翻译: 上千只眼睛盯着他, 汤姆感觉到了紧张。

When thousands of eyes were fixed on him, Tom felt nervous.

Thousands of eyes fixed on him, Tom felt nervous.

## 综合练习

### 第一部分

People were perhaps more honest a long time ago **when** life was very different from what it is today.

Nobody knows whether it will rain tomorrow. If it rains, we'll stay at home.

~~You are saying that everyone should be equal, and this is where I agree.~~

~~You are saying that everyone should be equal, and this is what I agree with.~~

What made the school proud was more than 90% of the students had been admitted to key universities.

That we know the overuse of fossil fuels **has caused** serious environmental problems.

It is known **that the overuse of fossil fuels has caused** serious environmental problems.

**That the overuse of fossil fuels has caused serious environmental problems** is known  
It is know **that the overuse of fossil fuels has caused** serious environmental problems.

we know **is** that the overuse of fossil fuels has caused serious environmental problems.

主语 What

It \_\_\_\_\_(report) that over 600 million people in China are suffering from nearsightedness.  
is reported

The news \_\_\_\_\_ was told to me is that Tom would go abroad next year.

The news \_\_\_\_\_ Tom would go abroad is told by him.

that/which

that

The suggestion that a new bridge \_\_\_\_\_(build)was accepted.  
should be built

Anyone who gains the most points wins the competition.

whoever gains the most points wins the competition.

It remains to be seen\_\_whether\_\_\_\_it will do us harm or good.

I just wonder\_\_\_\_\_that makes him so excited.

A. why it does

B. what he does

C. how it is

D. what it is

什么情况下， that 突然出现， 不会影响句子的结构和意思？

it is....that....

it is what that...====what it is that...

With piles of work at hand, Jane doubts\_\_\_\_\_she can pass the coming driving test.

A.whether

B. that

C. how

D. why

The most pleasant thing of the rainy season is\_\_\_\_\_one can be entirely out of dust.

A. what

B. that

C. whether

D. why

The manager put forward a suggestion\_\_\_\_\_we should have an assistant. There is too much work to do.

C. which

D. what

A. whether

**B. that**

It is generally considered unwise to give a child\_\_\_\_\_he or she wants.

**B. whatever**

C. whichever

D. whenever

A. however

参考答案:

what

whether;if

where

what;that

as

it

what

is reported

(should) be built

who

whoever

whether

DABBB

第二部分

I live next door to a couple\_\_\_\_\_children often make a lot of noise.

We will put off the picnic in the park until next week,\_\_\_\_\_the weather may be better.

.Scientists have advanced many theories about why human beings cry tears, none of\_\_\_\_\_has been proved.

He is the only one of the teachers who\_\_\_\_\_(know)French in our school.

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

This is one of the rooms that \_\_\_\_\_(be)free now.

We'd better fix a date\_\_\_\_\_which we will practice speaking English next week.

Earthquake is a sudden shaking of the earth's surface\_\_\_\_\_may cause great damage.

\_\_\_\_\_is well known to all, Asia is the largest continent in the world.

He didn't win the championship,\_\_\_\_\_I hadn't expected.

That Peter will marry Alice,\_\_\_\_\_has not been announced yet, has spread around.

The novel which\_\_\_\_\_ (give)by the professor yesterday mainly discusses the development of Chinese economy.

The novel\_\_\_\_\_ (give)by the professor yesterday mainly discusses the development of Chinese economy.

On Sundays there were a lot of children playing in the park,\_\_\_\_\_parents seated together joking.

On Sundays there were a lot of children playing in the park,\_\_\_\_\_parents were seated together joking.

The 11th of September is a special date,\_\_\_\_\_, I think, that will be remembered by the Americans forever.

- A. what
- B. it
- C. which
- D. one

The factory produced many famous cars, none of \_\_\_\_\_shipped to foreign countries.

- A. them
- B. which
- C. it
- D. what

It wasn't such a good present \_\_\_\_\_my cousin had promised me.

- A. that
- B. as
- C. which
- D. what

\_\_\_\_\_leaves the room last ought to turn off the lights.  
\_\_\_\_\_who leaves the room last ought to turn off the lights.  
\_\_\_\_\_who leave the room last ought to turn off the lights.

- A.Anyone
- B.Who
- C.Those
- D.Whoever

This is the only way\_\_\_\_\_you can find. By the way, I don't like the way\_\_\_\_\_he spoke to his mother.

- A.that;不填
- B. in which;不填
- C. which; which
- D.which;that

Is this museum\_\_\_\_\_they visited last month?

The teacher tells us that\_\_\_\_\_cleans the blackboard is to be praised.

- A.that
- B.the one
- C.which
- D. the one who

It was eleven o'clock\_\_\_\_\_they went out of the cinema.

It was at eleven o'clock\_\_\_\_\_they went out of the cinema.

- A.which
- B.that
- C.when
- D.on which

-Where did you get to know her?

-It was on the farm\_\_\_\_\_we worked.

- A.that
- B.there
- C.which
- D.where

Edward is the boy\_\_\_\_\_I think scored the winning points for the basketball team.

- A.whom
- B.which
- C.what
- D.who

I shall never forget those years\_\_\_\_\_I lived in the country with farmers,\_\_\_\_\_has a

沉舟侧畔千帆过，病树前头万木春。

great effect on my life.

A.that;which

B.when;which

D.when;who

C.which;that

whose

when

which

knows

are

on

which/that

was given

given

their

whose

DAB D;A;C A B;D C;B DDB